



**Distribution Package
Specification
Version 1.0 Errata B**

August 7, 2014

Acknowledgements

The material contained herein is not a license, either expressly or impliedly, to any intellectual property owned or controlled by any of the authors or developers of this material or to any contribution thereto. The material contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and, to the maximum extent permitted by applicable law, this information is provided AS IS AND WITH ALL FAULTS, and the authors and developers of this material hereby disclaim all other warranties and conditions, either express, implied or statutory, including, but not limited to, any (if any) implied warranties, duties or conditions of merchantability, of fitness for a particular purpose, of accuracy or completeness of responses, of results, of workmanlike effort, of lack of viruses and of lack of negligence, all with regard to this material and any contribution thereto. Designers must not rely on the absence or characteristics of any features or instructions marked "reserved" or "undefined." The Unified EFI Forum, Inc. reserves any features or instructions so marked for future definition and shall have no responsibility whatsoever for conflicts or incompatibilities arising from future changes to them. ALSO, THERE IS NO WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF TITLE, QUIET ENJOYMENT, QUIET POSSESSION, CORRESPONDENCE TO DESCRIPTION OR NON-INFRINGEMENT WITH REGARD TO THE SPECIFICATION AND ANY CONTRIBUTION THERETO.

IN NO EVENT WILL ANY AUTHOR OR DEVELOPER OF THIS MATERIAL OR ANY CONTRIBUTION THERETO BE LIABLE TO ANY OTHER PARTY FOR THE COST OF PROCURING SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES, LOST PROFITS, LOSS OF USE, LOSS OF DATA, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR SPECIAL DAMAGES WHETHER UNDER CONTRACT, TORT, WARRANTY, OR OTHERWISE, ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THIS OR ANY OTHER AGREEMENT RELATING TO THIS DOCUMENT, WHETHER OR NOT SUCH PARTY HAD ADVANCE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Copyright 2009 - 2014, Unified EFI, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Revision History

Revision	Revision History	Date
1.0	First release	3/13/2009
	Numbers in these cells refer to PIWG Mantis ticket numbers	
1.0 Errata A	655 Update 6.9.1 Guids section for module	2/01/2011
1.0 Errata A	712 Add module types and UNDEFINED to many options.	4/07/2011
1.0 Errata A	756 Add feature to differentiate parts by module type in library modules	4/07/2011
1.0 Errata A	763 Clarify package include paths and relax BaseName rules	4/07/2011
1.0 Errata B	815 Add more types to ModuleSurfaceArea.BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.FileName:FileType attribute 897 Adds the Prompt element to the PcdEntry 898 Adds the Abstract and Description Lang attribute and allows multiple entries of these with diff 899 Adds ARM to the enumerated list of supported architectures 900 Adds a GUID attribute to the BinaryFile 901 Updates to the XML schema 932 Add prompt strings to the PcdEntry structure 933 Clarification to scope Package Surface Area's PCD Error Number 1027 General errata 1028 Move PcdCName element to Dynamic EX PCDs in AsBuilt information 1030 additional errata	8/7//2014

Contents

1	Introduction.....	1
	1.1 Overview	1
	1.2 Related Information.....	1
	1.3 Definition of Terms.....	2
	1.4 Target Audience.....	8
	1.5 Conventions Used in This Document.....	8
	1.5.1 Table Conventions	9
	1.5.2 Pseudo-Code Conventions	14
	1.5.3 Typographic Conventions	14
2	Design Discussion	17
	2.1 Purpose.....	17
	2.2 Surface Area Description	19
	2.2.1 Conditional Surface Area Entries	20
	2.2.2 Surface Area Inheritance	21
	2.2.3 Source Code Surface Area	22
	2.2.4 Informational Surface Area	22
	2.2.5 Conditional Descriptions	22
	2.2.6 Binary Surface Area	22
	2.2.7 Hardware Surface Area.....	22
	2.3 Surface Area Grammar	22
	2.4 Distribution	26
	2.5 Tracking	27
3	Distribution Package File.....	29
	3.1 Distribution Requirements.....	29
	3.1.1 Creating a Distribution Package File	30
	3.1.2 Installing a Distribution Package File	32
	3.1.3 Removing a Distribution	33
	3.2 Distribution Rules and Definitions	34
4	Distribution Description XML Schema	37
	4.1 DistributionPackage.DistributionHeader	37
	4.1.1 DistributionHeader:ReadOnly	38
	4.1.2 DistributionHeader:RePackage	39
	4.1.3 DistributionHeader.Name	39
	4.1.4 DistributionHeader.Name:BaseName	39
	4.1.5 DistributionHeader.GUID	39
	4.1.6 DistributionHeader.GUID:Version	41
	4.1.7 DistributionHeader.Vendor	41

4.1.8 DistributionHeader.Date	41
4.1.9 DistributionHeader.Copyright	41
4.1.10 DistributionHeader.License	42
4.1.11 DistributionHeader.Abstract	43
4.1.12 DistributionHeader.Description	43
4.1.13 DistributionHeader.Signature	44
4.1.14 DistributionHeader.XmlSpecification	44

5

Package Surface Area Description	45
5.1 PackageSurfaceArea.Header	45
5.1.1 Header.Name	46
5.1.2 Header.Name:BaseName	46
5.1.3 Header.GUID	47
5.1.4 Header.GUID:Version	47
5.1.5 Header.Copyright	48
5.1.6 Header.License	48
5.1.7 Header.Abstract	48
5.1.8 Header.Description	49
5.1.9 Header.PackagePath	50
5.2 PackageSurfaceArea.ClonedFrom	50
5.2.1 ClonedFrom.GUID	51
5.2.2 ClonedFrom.GUID:Version	51
5.3 PackageSurfaceArea.LibraryClassDeclarations	51
5.3.1 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass	53
5.3.2 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:Keyword	53
5.3.3 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:SupArchList	53
5.3.4 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:SupModList	55
5.3.5 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.HeaderFile	55
5.3.6 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance	55
5.3.7 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance.GUID	57
5.3.8 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance.GUID:Version	57
5.3.9 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.HelpText	57
5.3.10 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.HelpText:Lang	58
5.4 PackageSurfaceArea.IndustryStandardIncludes	58
5.4.1 IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader	59
5.4.2 IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader.HeaderFile	59
5.4.3 IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader.HelpText	59
5.4.4 IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader.HelpText:Lang	60
5.5 PackageSurfaceArea.PackageIncludes	60
5.5.1 PackageIncludes.PackageHeader	61
5.5.2 PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HeaderFile	61
5.5.3 PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HeaderFile:SupArchList	63
5.5.4 PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HeaderFile:SupModList	63
5.5.5 PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HelpText	63
5.5.6 PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HelpText:Lang	64
5.6 PackageSurfaceArea.Modules	64

5.6.1 Modules.ModuleSurfaceArea	64
5.7 PackageSurfaceArea.GuidDeclarations	64
5.7.1 GuidDeclarations.Entry	65
5.7.2 GuidDeclarations.Entry.UiName	66
5.7.3 GuidDeclarations.Entry.GuidTypes	66
5.7.4 GuidDeclarations.Entry.SupArchList	66
5.7.5 GuidDeclarations.Entry.SupModList	67
5.7.6 GuidDeclarations.Entry.CName	67
5.7.7 GuidDeclarations.Entry.GuidValue	67
5.7.8 GuidDeclarations.Entry.HelpText	68
5.7.9 GuidDeclarations.Entry.HelpText.Lang	68
5.8 PackageSurfaceArea.ProtocolDeclarations	68
5.8.1 ProtocolDeclaration.Entry	69
5.8.2 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.UiName	69
5.8.3 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.SupArchList	70
5.8.4 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.SupModList	70
5.8.5 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.CName	70
5.8.6 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.GuidValue	72
5.8.7 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.HelpText	72
5.8.8 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.HelpText.Lang	72
5.9 PackageSurfaceArea.PpiDeclarations	72
5.9.1 PpiDeclarations.Entry	74
5.9.2 PpiDeclarations.Entry.UiName	74
5.9.3 PpiDeclarations.Entry.SupArchList	75
5.9.4 PpiDeclarations.Entry.SupModList	75
5.9.5 PpiDeclarations.Entry.CName	75
5.9.6 PpiDeclarations.Entry.GuidValue	77
5.9.7 PpiDeclarations.Entry.HelpText	77
5.9.8 PpiDeclarations.Entry.HelpText.Lang	77
5.10 PackageSurfaceArea.PcdDeclarations	77
5.10.1 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry	78
5.10.2 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.SupArchList	78
5.10.3 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.SupModList	79
5.10.4 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.TokenSpaceGuidCname	79
5.10.5 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.Token	81
5.10.6 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.CName	81
5.10.7 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.DatumType	81
5.10.8 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.ValidUsage	81
5.10.9 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.DefaultValue	83
5.10.10 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.MaxDatumSize	83
5.10.11 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.HelpText	84
5.10.12 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.HelpText.Lang	84
5.10.13 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError	85
5.10.14 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ValidValueList	85
5.10.15 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ValidValueList.Lang	87
5.10.16 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ValidValueRange	87
5.10.17 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.Expression	87

- 5.10.18 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ErrorNumber 89
- 5.10.19 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ErrorMessage 89
- 5.10.20 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ErrorMessage:Lang 89
- 5.11 PackageSurfaceArea.PcdRelationshipChecks 89
 - 5.11.1 PcdRelationshipChecks.PcdCheck 90
- 5.12 PackageSurfaceArea.MiscellaneousFiles 90
 - 5.12.1 MiscellaneousFiles.Copyright 91
 - 5.12.2 MiscellaneousFiles.License 91
 - 5.12.3 MiscellaneousFiles.Abstract 93
 - 5.12.4 MiscellaneousFiles.Description 93
 - 5.12.5 MiscellaneousFiles.Filename 93
 - 5.12.6 MiscellaneousFiles.Filename:Executable 93
- 5.13 PackageSurfaceArea.UserExtensions 94
 - 5.13.1 UserExtensions:UserId 95
 - 5.13.2 UserExtensions:Identifier 95

6

- Module Surface Area Description 97**
- 6.1 ModuleSurfaceArea:BinaryModule 98
- 6.2 ModuleSurfaceArea.Header 98
 - 6.2.1 Header.Name 99
 - 6.2.2 Header.Name:BaseName 99
 - 6.2.3 Header.GUID 99
 - 6.2.4 Header.GUID:Version 100
 - 6.2.5 Header.Copyright 100
 - 6.2.6 Header.License 101
 - 6.2.7 Header.Abstract 101
 - 6.2.8 Header.Description 102
- 6.3 ModuleSurfaceArea.ModuleProperties 102
 - 6.3.1 ModuleProperties:SupArchList 103
 - 6.3.2 ModuleProperties:SupModList 104
 - 6.3.3 ModuleProperties.ModuleType 104
 - 6.3.4 ModuleProperties.Path 104
 - 6.3.5 ModuleProperties.PcdIsDriver 106
 - 6.3.6 ModuleProperties.UefiSpecificationVersion 106
 - 6.3.7 ModuleProperties.PiSpecificationVersion 106
 - 6.3.8 ModuleProperties.Specification 106
 - 6.3.9 ModuleProperties.Specification:Version 108
 - 6.3.10 ModuleProperties.BootMode 108
 - 6.3.11 ModuleProperties.BootMode:Usage 108
 - 6.3.12 ModuleProperties.BootMode:SupArchList 110
 - 6.3.13 ModuleProperties.BootMode:FeatureFlag 110
 - 6.3.14 ModuleProperties.BootMode.SupportedBootModes 110
 - 6.3.15 ModuleProperties.BootMode.HelpText 112
 - 6.3.16 ModuleProperties.BootMode.HelpText:Lang 112
 - 6.3.17 ModuleProperties.Event 112
 - 6.3.18 ModuleProperties.Event:Usage 112

6.3.19	ModuleProperties.Event.EventType	113
6.3.20	ModuleProperties.Event.SupArchList	113
6.3.21	ModuleProperties.Event.FeatureFlag	115
6.3.22	ModuleProperties.Event.HelpText	115
6.3.23	ModuleProperties.Event.HelpText:Lang	115
6.3.24	ModuleProperties.HOB	117
6.3.25	ModuleProperties.HOB:Usage	117
6.3.26	ModuleProperties.HOB:HobType	117
6.3.27	ModuleProperties.HOB:SupArchList	118
6.3.28	ModuleProperties.HOB:FeatureFlag	119
6.3.29	ModuleProperties.HOB.HelpText	119
6.3.30	ModuleProperties.HOB.HelpText:Lang	119
6.4	ModuleSurfaceArea.ClonedFrom	120
6.4.1	ModuleSurfaceArea.ClonedFrom	121
6.4.2	ClonedFrom.Guid	121
6.4.3	ClonedFrom.GuidValue:Version	121
6.5	ModuleSurfaceArea.LibraryClassDefinitions	121
6.5.1	LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass	122
6.5.2	LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:Usage	122
6.5.3	LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:SupArchList	124
6.5.4	LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:SupModList	124
6.5.5	LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:FeatureFlag	124
6.5.6	LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance	125
6.5.7	LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance.Guid	125
6.5.8	LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance.Guid:Version	126
6.5.9	LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.HelpText	126
6.5.10	LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.HelpText:Lang	126
6.6	ModuleSurfaceArea.SourceFiles	127
6.6.1	SourceFiles.FileName	128
6.6.2	SourceFiles.FileName:Family	128
6.6.3	SourceFiles.FileName:SupArchList	129
6.6.4	SourceFiles.FileName:SupModList	129
6.6.5	SourceFiles.FileName:FeatureFlag	131
6.6.6	SourceFiles.HelpText	131
6.6.7	SourceFiles.HelpText:Lang	131
6.7	ModuleSurfaceArea.BinaryFiles	132
6.7.1	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile	133
6.7.2	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.FileName	133
6.7.3	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.FileName:FileType	133
6.7.4	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.FileName:SupArchList	133
6.7.5	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.FileName:SupModList	134
6.7.6	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.FileName:FeatureFlag	134
6.7.7	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.FileName:Guid	135
6.7.8	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt	135
6.7.9	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue	136
6.7.10	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.TokenSpaceGuidValue	136
6.7.11	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.Token	137

6.7.12	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdCName	137
6.7.13	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.DatumType	137
6.7.14	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.MaxDatumSize	137
6.7.15	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.Value	138
6.7.16	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.Offset	138
6.7.17	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.HelpText	138
6.7.18	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.HelpText:Lang	140
6.7.19	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ValidValueList	140
6.7.20	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ValidValueList:Lang	140
6.7.21	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ValidValueRange	141
6.7.22	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.Expression	141
6.7.23	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError	142
6.7.24	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ErrorNumber	142
6.7.25	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage	142
6.7.26	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage:Lang	144
6.7.27	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue	144
6.7.28	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdCName	144
6.7.29	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.TokenSpaceGuidValue	146
6.7.30	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.Token	146
6.7.31	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.DatumType	146
6.7.32	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.MaxDatumSize	146
6.7.33	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.Value	148
6.7.34	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.HelpText	148
6.7.35	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.HelpText:Lang	148
6.7.36	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError	148
6.7.37	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ValidValueList	149
6.7.38	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ValidValueList:Lang	150
6.7.39	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ValidValueRange	150
6.7.40	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.Expression	150
6.7.41	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ErrorNumber	151
6.7.42	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage	151
6.7.43	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage:Lang	151
6.7.44	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.LibraryInstances	153
6.7.45	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.LibraryInstances.GUID	153
6.7.46	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.LibraryInstances.GUID:Version	153
6.7.47	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.BuildFlags	153
6.7.48	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.HelpText	154
6.7.49	BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.HelpText:Lang	154
6.8	ModuleSurfaceArea.PackageDependencies	154
6.8.1	PackageDependencies.Package	155
6.8.2	PackageDependencies.Package:SupArchList	155
6.8.3	PackageDependencies.Package:SupModList	157
6.8.4	PackageDependencies.Package:FeatureFlag	157
6.8.5	PackageDependencies.Package.Description	157
6.8.6	PackageDependencies.Package.Description:Lang	158
6.8.7	PackageDependencies.Package.GUID	158
6.8.8	PackageDependencies.Package.GUID:Version	158

6.9	ModuleSurfaceArea.Guids	159
6.9.1	Guids.GuidCName	160
6.9.2	Guids.GuidCName:Usage	160
6.9.3	Guids.GuidCName:GuidType	162
6.9.4	Guids.GuidCName:SupArchList	164
6.9.5	Guids.GuidCName:SupModList	164
6.9.6	Guids.GuidCName:FeatureFlag	164
6.9.7	Guids.GuidCName.CName	165
6.9.8	Guids.GuidCName.VariableName	165
6.9.9	Guids.GuidCName.GUID	166
6.9.10	Guids.GuidCName.HelpText	166
6.9.11	Guids.GuidCName.HelpText:Lang	166
6.10	ModuleSurfaceArea.Protocols	166
6.10.1	Protocols.Protocol	167
6.10.2	Protocols.Protocol:Usage	167
6.10.3	Protocols.Protocol:Notify	169
6.10.4	Protocols.Protocol:SupArchList	169
6.10.5	Protocols.Protocol:SupModList	169
6.10.6	Protocols.Protocol:FeatureFlag	171
6.10.7	Protocols.Protocol.CName	171
6.10.8	Protocols.Protocol.GUID	171
6.10.9	Protocols.Protocol.HelpText	172
6.10.10	Protocols.Protocol.HelpText:Lang	172
6.11	ModuleSurfaceArea.PPIs	172
6.11.1	PPIs.Ppi	174
6.11.2	PPIs.Ppi:Usage	174
6.11.3	PPIs.Ppi:Notify	176
6.11.4	PPIs.Ppi:SupArchList	176
6.11.5	PPIs.Ppi:SupModList	176
6.11.6	PPIs.Ppi:FeatureFlag	178
6.11.7	PPIs.Ppi.CName	178
6.11.8	PPIs.Ppi.GUID	178
6.11.9	PPIs.Ppi.HelpText	179
6.11.10	PPIs.Ppi.HelpText:Lang	179
6.12	ModuleSurfaceArea.Externs	179
6.12.1	Externs.Extern	180
6.12.2	Externs.Extern:SupArchList	180
6.12.3	Externs.Extern:SupModList	181
6.12.4	Externs.Extern:FeatureFlag	181
6.12.5	Externs.Extern.EntryPoint	182
6.12.6	Externs.Extern.UnloadImage	182
6.12.7	Externs.Extern.Constructor	183
6.12.8	Externs.Extern.Destructor	183
6.12.9	Externs.Extern.HelpText	183
6.12.10	Externs.Extern.HelpText:Lang	184
6.13	ModuleSurfaceArea.PcdCoded	184
6.13.1	PcdCoded.PcdEntry	185

6.13.2 PcdCoded.PcdEntry:PcdItemType	185
6.13.3 PcdCoded.PcdEntry:PcdUsage	187
6.13.4 PcdCoded.PcdEntry:SupArchList	188
6.13.5 PcdCoded.PcdEntry:SupModList	188
6.13.6 PcdCoded.PcdEntry:FeatureFlag	188
6.13.7 PcdCoded.PcdEntry.CName	189
6.13.8 PcdCoded.PcdEntry.TokenSpaceGuidCName	189
6.13.9 PcdCoded.PcdEntry.DefaultValue	189
6.13.10 PcdCoded.PcdEntry.HelpText	190
6.13.11 PcdCoded.PcdEntry.HelpText:Lang	190
6.14 ModuleSurfaceArea.PeiDepex	191
6.14.1 PeiDepex:SupArchList	192
6.14.2 PeiDepex:SupModList	192
6.14.3 PeiDepex:FeatureFlag	194
6.14.4 PeiDepex.Expression	194
6.14.5 PeiDepex.HelpText	195
6.14.6 PeiDepex.HelpText:Lang	195
6.15 Module SurfaceArea.DxeDepex	195
6.15.1 DxeDepex:SupArchList	196
6.15.2 DxeDepex:SupModList	196
6.15.3 DxeDepex:FeatureFlag	198
6.15.4 DxeDepex.Expression	198
6.15.5 DxeDepex.HelpText	199
6.15.6 DxeDepex.HelpText:Lang	199
6.16 Module SurfaceArea.SmmDepex	199
6.16.1 SmmDepex:SupArchList	200
6.16.2 SmmDepex:SupModList	200
6.16.3 SmmDepex:FeatureFlag	202
6.16.4 SmmDepex.Expression	202
6.16.5 SmmDepex.HelpText	203
6.16.6 SmmDepex.HelpText:Lang	203
6.17 ModuleSurfaceArea.MiscellaneousFiles	203
6.17.1 MiscellaneousFiles.Description	205
6.17.2 MiscellaneousFiles.Description:Lang	205
6.17.3 MiscellaneousFiles.Filename	205
6.17.4 Misc.Filename:Executable	206
6.18 ModuleSurfaceArea.UserExtensions	206
6.18.1 UserExtensions:UserId	207
6.18.2 UserExtensions:Identifier	207

7

Tools Surface Area Description	209
7.1 Tools.Header	209
7.1.1 Header.Name	210
7.1.2 Header.Copyright	210
7.1.3 Header.License	210
7.1.4 Header.Abstract	211

7.1.5 Header.Description	212
7.2 Tools.FileName	212
7.2.1 Filename:OS	213
7.2.2 Filename:Executable.....	213
8	
MiscellaneousFiles Section.....	215
8.1 MiscellaneousFiles.Header.....	215
8.1.1 Header.Name.....	216
8.1.2 Header.Copyright.....	216
8.1.3 Header.License.....	216
8.1.4 Header.Abstract.....	217
8.1.5 Header.Description.....	218
8.2 MiscellaneousFiles.FileName.....	218
8.2.1 Filename:Executable.....	219
9	
UserExtensions	221
9.1 UserExtensions:UserId	222
9.2 UserExtensions:Identifier.....	222
Appendix A	
XML Examples	223
A.1Distribution Package Header	223
A.2Package Header	224
A.3UEFI Application.....	226
A.4UEFI Application Source Files	229
A.5UEFI Driver.....	229
A.6Library.....	231
A.7PI PEIM	233
A.8PI DXE Driver	235
A.9Tool	237

Platform Initialization Specification

Tables

Table 1. Module Type Names	4
Table 2. Base XML Data Types	9
Table 3. Value Types	9
Table 4. Enumeration Types	10
Table 5. List Types.....	13
Table 6. Table Description	14
Table 7. Usage Description.....	23
Table 8. Surface Area Grammar Summary	24
Table 9. Distribution Rules & Definitions KEY	34
Table 10. DistributionPackage	37
Table 11. DistributionPackage.DistributionHeader	38
Table 12. DistributionHeader:ReadOnly	38
Table 13. DistributionHeader:RePackage.....	39
Table 14. DistributionHeader.Name.....	39
Table 15. DistributionHeader.Name:BaseName	39
Table 16. DistributionHeader.GUID	39
Table 17. DistributionHeader.GUID:Version	41
Table 18. DistributionHeader.Vendor.....	41
Table 19. DistributionHeader.Date.....	41
Table 20. DistributionHeader.Copyright.....	41
Table 21. DistributionHeader.License	42
Table 22. DistributionHeader.Abstract	43
Table 23. DistributionHeader.Abstract:Lang	43
Table 24. DistributionHeader.Description	43
Table 25. DistributionHeader.Description:Lang	44
Table 26. DistributionHeader.Signature	44
Table 27. DistributionHeader.XmlSpecification.....	44
Table 28. DistributionPackage.PackageSurfaceArea	45
Table 29. PackageSurfaceArea.Header	46
Table 30. Header.Name.....	46
Table 31. Header.Name:BaseName	47
Table 32. Header.GUID	47
Table 33. Header.GUID:Version	47
Table 34. Header.Copyright.....	48
Table 35. Header.License	48
Table 36. Header.Abstract	49
Table 37. Header.Abstract:Lang	49
Table 38. Header.Description	49
Table 39. Header.Description:Lang	50
Table 40. Header.PackagePath.....	50
Table 41. PackageSurfaceArea.ClonedFrom	51
Table 42. ClonedFrom.GUID	51
Table 43. ClonedFrom.GUID:Version	51

Table 44. PackageSurfaceArea.LibraryClassDeclarations	53
Table 45. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass	53
Table 46. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:Keyword	53
Table 47. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:SupArchList.....	53
Table 48. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:SupModList	55
Table 49. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.HeaderFile	55
Table 50. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance	55
Table 51. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance.GUID	57
Table 52. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:RecommendedInstance.GUID:Version ...	57
Table 53. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.HelpText.....	57
Table 54. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.HelpText:Lang.....	58
Table 55. PackageSurfaceArea.IndustryStandardIncludes	59
Table 56. IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader	59
Table 57. IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader.HeaderFile	59
Table 58. IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader.HelpText.....	60
Table 59. IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader.HelpText:Lang.....	60
Table 60. PackageSurfaceArea.PackageIncludes.....	61
Table 61. PackageIncludes.PackageHeader	61
Table 62. PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HeaderFile	61
Table 63. PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HeaderFile:SupArchList.....	63
Table 64. PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HeaderFile:SupModList	63
Table 65. PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HelpText	63
Table 66. PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HelpText:Lang	64
Table 67. PackageSurfaceArea.Modules	64
Table 68. PackageSurfaceArea.GuidDeclarations	65
Table 69. GuidDeclarations.Entry	65
Table 70. GuidDeclarations.Entry:UiName	66
Table 71. GuidDeclarations.Entry:GuidTypes.....	66
Table 72. GuidDeclarations.Entry:SupArchList.....	66
Table 73. GuidDeclarations.Entry:SupModList	67
Table 74. GuidDeclarations.Entry.CName	67
Table 75. GuidDeclarations.Entry.GuidValue	67
Table 76. GuidDeclarations.Entry.HelpText.....	68
Table 77. GuidDeclarations.Entry.HelpText:Lang.....	68
Table 78. PackageSurfaceArea.ProtocolDeclarations.....	69
Table 79. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry	69
Table 80. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry:UiName	69
Table 81. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry:SupArchList	70
Table 82. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry:SupModList	70
Table 83. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.CName	70
Table 84. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.GuidValue.....	72
Table 85. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.HelpText.....	72
Table 86. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.HelpText:Lang	72
Table 87. PackageSurfaceArea.PpiDeclarations	74
Table 88. PpiDeclarations.Entry	74
Table 89. PpiDeclarations.Entry:UiName	74
Table 90. PpiDeclarations.Entry:SupArchList	75

Table 91. PpiDeclarations.Entry.SupModList	75
Table 92. PpiDeclarations.Entry.CName	75
Table 93. PpiDeclarations.Entry.GuidValue	77
Table 94. PpiDeclarations.Entry.HelpText	77
Table 95. PpiDeclarations.Entry.HelpText:Lang	77
Table 96. PackageSurfaceArea.PcdDeclarations	78
Table 97. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry	78
Table 98. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry:SupArchList	79
Table 99. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry:SupModList	79
Table 100. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.TokenSpaceGuidCname	79
Table 101. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.Token	81
Table 102. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.CName	81
Table 103. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.DatumType	81
Table 104. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.ValidUsage	81
Table 105. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.DefaultValue	83
Table 106. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.MaxDatumSize	83
Table 107. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.Prompt	83
Table 108. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.HelpText	84
Table 109. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.HelpText:Lang	85
Table 110. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError	85
Table 111. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ValidValueList	85
Table 112. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ValidValueList:Lang	87
Table 113. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ValidValueRange	87
Table 114. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.Expression	87
Table 115. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ErrorNumber	89
Table 116. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ErrorMessage	89
Table 117. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ErrorMessage:Lang	89
Table 118. PackageSurfaceArea.PcdRelationshipChecks	90
Table 119. PcdRelationshipChecks.PcdCheck	90
Table 120. PackageSurfaceArea.MiscellaneousFiles	91
Table 121. MiscellaneousFiles.Copyright	91
Table 122. MiscellaneousFiles.License	91
Table 123. MiscellaneousFiles.Abstract	93
Table 124. MiscellaneousFiles.Description	93
Table 125. MiscellaneousFiles.Filename	93
Table 126. MiscellaneousFiles.Filename:Executable	93
Table 127. PackageSurfaceArea.UserExtensions	95
Table 128. UserExtensions:UserId	95
Table 129. UserExtensions:Identifier	95
Table 130. ModuleSurfaceArea	98
Table 131. ModuleSurfaceArea.BinaryModule	98
Table 132. ModuleSurfaceArea.Header	99
Table 133. Header.Name	99
Table 134. Header.Name:BaseName	99
Table 135. Header.GUID	99
Table 136. Header.GUID:Version	100
Table 137. Header.Copyright	100

Table 138. Header.License	101
Table 139. Header.Abstract	101
Table 140. Header.Abstract.Lang	101
Table 141. Header.Description	102
Table 142. Header.Description.Lang	102
Table 143. ModuleSurfaceArea.ModuleProperties	103
Table 144. ModuleProperties:SupArchList	103
Table 145. ModuleProperties:SupModList	104
Table 146. ModuleProperties.ModuleType	104
Table 147. ModuleProperties.Path	104
Table 148. ModuleProperties.PcdIsDriver	106
Table 149. ModuleProperties.UefiSpecificationVersion	106
Table 150. ModuleProperties.PiSpecificationVersion	106
Table 151. ModuleProperties.Specification	106
Table 152. ModuleProperties.Specification:Version	108
Table 153. ModuleProperties.BootMode	108
Table 154. ModuleProperties.BootMode:Usage	108
Table 155. ModuleProperties.BootMode:SupArchList	110
Table 156. ModuleProperties.BootMode:FeatureFlag	110
Table 157. ModuleProperties.BootMode.SupportedBootMode	110
Table 158. ModuleProperties.BootMode.HelpText	112
Table 159. ModuleProperties.BootMode.HelpText.Lang	112
Table 160. ModuleSurfaceArea.ModuleProperties.Event	112
Table 161. ModuleProperties.Event:Usage	113
Table 162. ModuleProperties.Event:EventType	113
Table 163. ModuleProperties.Event:SupArchList	113
Table 164. ModuleProperties.Event:FeatureFlag	115
Table 165. ModuleProperties.Event.HelpText	115
Table 166. ModuleProperties.Event.HelpText.Lang	115
Table 167. ModuleSurfaceArea.ModuleProperties.HOB	117
Table 168. ModuleProperties.HOB:Usage	117
Table 169. ModuleProperties.HOB:HobType	117
Table 170. ModuleProperties.HOB:SupArchList	118
Table 171. ModuleProperties.HOB:FeatureFlag	119
Table 172. ModuleProperties.HOB.HelpText	119
Table 173. ModuleProperties.HOB.HelpText.Lang	119
Table 174. ModuleSurfaceArea.ClonedFrom	121
Table 175. ClonedFrom.GUID	121
Table 176. ClonedFrom.GuidValue:Version	121
Table 177. ModuleSurfaceArea.LibraryClassDefinitions	122
Table 178. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass	122
Table 179. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:Usage	122
Table 180. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:SupArchList	124
Table 181. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:SupModList	124
Table 182. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:FeatureFlag	125
Table 183. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.Keyword	125
Table 184. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance	125

Table 185. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance.GUID	126
Table 186. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:RecommendedInstance.GUID:Version ..	126
Table 187. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.HelpText	126
Table 188. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.HelpText:Lang	126
Table 189. ModuleSurfaceArea.SourceFiles	128
Table 190. SourceFiles.Filename	128
Table 191. SourceFiles.Filename:Family	129
Table 192. SourceFiles.Filename:SupArchList	129
Table 193. SourceFiles.Filename:SupModList	129
Table 194. SourceFiles.Filename:FeatureFlag	131
Table 195. SourceFiles.HelpText	131
Table 196. SourceFiles.HelpText:Lang	131
Table 197. ModuleSurfaceArea.BinaryFiles	132
Table 198. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile	133
Table 199. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename	133
Table 200. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename:FileType	133
Table 201. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename:SupArchList	134
Table 202. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename:SupModList	134
Table 203. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename:FeatureFlag	135
Table 204. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename:GUID	135
Table 205. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt	136
Table 206. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue	136
Table 207. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.TokenSpaceGuidValue	137
Table 208. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.Token	137
Table 209. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdCName	137
Table 210. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.DatumType	137
Table 211. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.MaxDatumSize	138
Table 212. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.Value	138
Table 213. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.Offset	138
Table 214. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.HelpText	138
Table 215. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.HelpText:Lang	140
Table 216. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ValidValueList	140
Table 217. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ValidValueList:Lang ..	140
Table 218. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ValidValueRange	141
Table 219. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.Expression	141
Table 220. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError	142
Table 221. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ErrorNumber	142
Table 222. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage	142
Table 223. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage:Lang ..	144
Table 224. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue	144
Table 225. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdCName	144
Table 226. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.TokenSpaceGuidValue	146
Table 227. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.Token	146
Table 228. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.DatumType	146
Table 229. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.MaxDatumSize	146
Table 230. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.Value	148
Table 231. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.HelpText	148

Table 232. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.HelpText:Lang	148
Table 233. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError	149
Table 234. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ValidValueList	149
Table 235. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ValidValueList:Lang	150
Table 236. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ValidValueRange	150
Table 237. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.Expression	151
Table 238. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ErrorNumber	151
Table 239. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage	151
Table 240. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage:Lang	151
Table 241. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.LibraryInstances	153
Table 242. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.LibraryInstances:GUID	153
Table 243. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.LibraryInstances:Version	153
Table 244. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.BuildFlags	154
Table 245. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.HelpText	154
Table 246. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.HelpText:Lang	154
Table 247. ModuleSurfaceArea.PackageDependencies	155
Table 248. PackageDependencies.Package	155
Table 249. PackageDependencies.Package:SupArchList	155
Table 250. PackageDependencies.Package:SupModList	157
Table 251. PackageDependencies.Package:FeatureFlag	157
Table 252. PackageDependencies.Package.Description	158
Table 253. PackageDependencies.Package.Description:Lang	158
Table 254. PackageDependencies.Package.GUID	158
Table 255. PackageDependencies.Package.GUID:Version	158
Table 256. ModuleSurfaceArea.Guids	160
Table 257. Guids.GuidCName	160
Table 258. Guids.GuidCName:Usage	160
Table 259. Guids.GuidCName:GuidType	162
Table 260. Guids.GuidCName:SupArchList	164
Table 261. Guids.GuidCName:SupModList	164
Table 262. Guids.GuidCName:FeatureFlag	165
Table 263. Guids.GuidCName.CName	165
Table 264. Guids.GuidCName.VariableName	165
Table 265. Guids.GuidCName.GUID	166
Table 266. Guids.GuidCName.HelpText	166
Table 267. Guids.GuidCName.HelpText:Lang	166
Table 268. ModuleSurfaceArea.Protocols	167
Table 269. Protocols.Protocol	167
Table 270. Protocols.Protocol:Usage	167
Table 271. Protocols.Protocol:Notify	169
Table 272. Protocols.Protocol:SupArchList	169
Table 273. Protocols.Protocol:SupModList	169
Table 274. Protocols.Protocol:FeatureFlag	171
Table 275. Protocols.Protocols.CName	171
Table 276. Protocols.Protocol.GUID	171
Table 277. Protocols.Protocol.HelpTex	172
Table 278. Protocols.Protocol.HelpText:Lang	172

Table 279. ModuleSurfaceArea.PPIs.....	174
Table 280. PPIs.Ppi.....	174
Table 281. PPIs.Ppi:Usage.....	174
Table 282. Ppis.Ppi:Notify.....	176
Table 283. PPIs.Ppi:SupArchList.....	176
Table 284. PPIs.Ppi:SupModList.....	176
Table 285. PPIs.Ppi:FeatureFlag.....	178
Table 286. PPIs.Ppi.CName.....	178
Table 287. PPIs.Ppi.GUID.....	178
Table 288. PPIs.Ppi.HelpTex.....	179
Table 289. PPIs.Ppi.HelpText:Lang.....	179
Table 290. ModuleSurfaceArea.Externs.....	180
Table 291. Externs.Extern.....	180
Table 292. Externs.Extern:SupArchList.....	181
Table 293. Externs.Extern:SupModList.....	181
Table 294. Externs.Extern:FeatureFlag.....	182
Table 295. Externs.Extern.EntryPoint.....	182
Table 296. Externs.Extern.UnloadImage.....	182
Table 297. Externs.Extern.Constructor.....	183
Table 298. Externs.Extern.Destructor.....	183
Table 299. Externs.Extern.HelpText.....	183
Table 300. Externs.Extern.HelpText:Lang.....	184
Table 301. ModuleSurfaceArea.PcdCoded.....	185
Table 302. ModuleSurfaceArea.PcdCoded.PcdEntry.....	185
Table 303. PcdCoded.PcdEntry:PcdItemType.....	185
Table 304. PcdCoded.PcdEntry:PcdUsage.....	187
Table 305. PcdCoded.PcdEntry:SupArchList.....	188
Table 306. PcdCoded.PcdEntry:SupModList.....	188
Table 307. PcdCoded.PcdEntry:FeatureFlag.....	189
Table 308. PcdCoded.PcdEntry.CName.....	189
Table 309. PcdCoded.PcdEntry.TokenSpaceGuidCName.....	189
Table 310. PcdCoded.PcdEntry.DefaultValue.....	190
Table 311. PcdCoded.PcdEntry.HelpText.....	190
Table 312. PcdCoded.PcdEntry.HelpText:Lang.....	190
Table 313. ModuleSurfaceArea.PeiDepex.....	192
Table 314. PeiDepex:SupArchList.....	192
Table 315. PeiDepex:ModArchList.....	192
Table 316. PeiDepex:FeatureFlag.....	194
Table 317. PeiDepex.Expression.....	194
Table 318. PeiDepex.HelpText.....	195
Table 319. PeiDepex.HelpText:Lang.....	195
Table 320. ModuleSurfaceArea.DxeDepex.....	196
Table 321. DxeDepex:SupArchList.....	196
Table 322. DxeDepex:SupModList.....	196
Table 323. DxeDepex:FeatureFlag.....	198
Table 324. DxeDepex.Expression.....	198
Table 325. DxeDepex.HelpText.....	199

Table 326. DxeDepex.HelpText:Lang	199
Table 327. ModuleSurfaceArea.SmmDepex	200
Table 328. SmmDepex:SupArchList	200
Table 329. SmmDepex:SupModList	200
Table 330. SmmDepex:FeatureFlag	202
Table 331. SmmDepex.Expression	202
Table 332. SmmDepex.HelpText	203
Table 333. SmmDepex.HelpText:Lang	203
Table 334. ModuleSurfaceArea.MiscellaneousFiles	205
Table 335. MiscellaneousFiles.Description	205
Table 336. MiscellaneousFiles. Description:Lang	205
Table 337. MiscellaneousFiles.FileName	206
Table 338. Misc.FileName:Executable	206
Table 339. ModuleSurfaceArea.UserExtensions	207
Table 340. UserExtensions:UserId	207
Table 341. UserExtensions:Identifier	207
Table 342. DistributionPackage.Tools	209
Table 343. Tools.Header	210
Table 344. Header.Name	210
Table 345. Header.Copyright	210
Table 346. Header.License	210
Table 347. Header.Abstract	211
Table 348. Header.Abstract:Lang	211
Table 349. Header.Description	212
Table 350. Header.Description:Lang	212
Table 351. Tools.FileName	213
Table 352. FileName:OS	213
Table 353. FileName:Executable	213
Table 354. DistributionPackage.MiscellaneousFiles	215
Table 355. MiscellaneousFiles.Header	216
Table 356. Header.Name	216
Table 357. Header.Copyright	216
Table 358. Header.License	216
Table 359. Header.Abstract	217
Table 360. Header.Abstract:Lang	217
Table 361. Header.Description	218
Table 362. Header.Description:Lang	218
Table 363. MiscellaneousFiles.FileName	219
Table 364. FileName:Executable	219
Table 365. DistributionPackage.UserExtensions	222
Table 366. UserExtensions:UserId	222
Table 367. UserExtensions:Identifier	222

Figures

Figure 1. Module Surface Area Differs for Different Binaries	21
Figure 2. Distribution Package File layout	30
Figure 3. NoSuchCorpPkg Directory Tree	31

Distribution Packaging Specification

This specification defines the overall architecture and external interfaces that are required for distribution of UEFI/PI source and binary files.

1.1 Overview

The packaging infrastructure defines the requirements for sharing code (source and/or binary) between firmware development teams using UEFI/PI elements.

This document describes the format of the distribution meta-data file, which has the following goals:

Distributing Package

An archive of "Packages". An archive of packages. Packages are collections of related include files, modules and libraries. Packages provide a method for defining industry standard objects used by modules, along with individual modules.

Distributing Libraries

Enable source distribution of libraries.

Distributing Modules

The final goal is to enable distribution of modules, both in source and binary form. Individual modules may be compiled and distributed in binary form to other users, which may be integrated easily into a platform's firmware image or option ROMs. Binary distribution is limited to FFS leaf section file types.

This document is intended for distribution package maintainers supporting UEFI/PI development. This content is required for the development of Distribution Package creation and installation tools and may also be useful for the development of custom Distribution Package tools that utilize the extension mechanisms defined in this specification. It may also be of interest if there is an issue with the creation, installation or removal of packages.

1.2 Related Information

The following publications and sources of information may be useful to you or are referred to by this specification:

- *Unified Extensible Firmware Interface Specification*, Version 2.1, Unified EFI, Inc, 2006, <http://www.uefi.org>.
- *UEFI Platform Initialization Specification*, Version 1.0, Unified EFI, Inc, 2006, <http://www.uefi.org>.
- *Extensible Markup Language (XML) 1.0*, Latest Edition, <http://www.w3.org/TR/xml/>
- *XML Schema Part 0*, Latest Edition, <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-0/>
- *XML Schema Part 1*, Latest Edition, <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-1/>

- *XML Schema Part 2*, Latest Edition, <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/>

1.3 Definition of Terms

The following terms are used throughout this specification.

BDS

BIOS Boot Device Selection phase.

BNF

BNF is an acronym for "Backus Naur Form." John Backus and Peter Naur introduced for the first time a formal notation to describe the syntax of a given language.

Distribution Content File

A file in ZIP format that holds all of the content (include files, libraries, modules) to be distributed.

Distribution Description File

A file in XML format that describes the files in the content and the related information needed to install the file.

Distribution Package File

A file in ZIP format used for releasing and distributing source code or binaries. It contains a Distribution Content File and a Distribution Description File.

DXE

DXE Driver Execution Environment phase.

DXE SAL

Special class of DXE module that produces SAL Runtime Services. DXE SAL modules differ from DXE Runtime modules in that the DXE Runtime modules support Virtual mode OS calls at OS runtime and DXE SAL modules support intermixing Virtual or Physical mode OS calls.

DXE SMM

Special class of DXE module that is loaded into the System Management Mode memory.

DXE Runtime

Special class of DXE module that provides Runtime Services

GUID and GuidValue

Globally Unique Identifier. A 128-bit value used to uniquely name entities. A unique GUID can be generated by an individual without the help of a centralized authority. This allows the generation of names that will never conflict, even among multiple, unrelated parties.

HII

Human Interface Infrastructure. This generally refers to the database that contains string, font, and IFR information along with other pieces that use one of the database components.

IFR

Internal Forms Representation. This is the binary encoding that is used for the representation of user interface pages.

Library Class

A library class defines the API or interface set for a library. The consumer of the library is coded to the library class definition. Library classes are defined via a library class .h file that is published by a package.

Library Instance

An implementation of one or more library classes.

Module Developer (MD)

A module developer is responsible for implementing new modules or maintaining existing modules. A module developer is responsible for describing all the information required to build a module and also describing the runtime behavior of a module. This description is called the Module Surface Area.

Module Surface Area

A full description of all of the elements a module produces and/or consumes that allow it to be integrated into a platform firmware image and executed as expected. These elements included binary file names, source file names, packages, libraries, protocols, PPIs, GUIDs, events, Platform Configuration Database elements, UEFI variables, UEFI System Configuration Tables, boot modes, HOBs, HII packages, and external variable and function names (including the module's entry point). Binary modules must minimally describe the dependencies required for a the module to execute correctly. Source modules must minimally describe their dependencies so that it can be compiled and linked into a binary module. Modules may also have runtime dependencies that must be satisfied in order for the module to execute correctly.

Module Type

All libraries and modules belong to one of the Module Types listed in Table 1, below.

Table 1. Module Type Names

Name	Description
BASE	Module that is environment neutral. Typically only used for libraries.
SEC	Module is the SEC and contains the reset vector.
PEIM	Module is a PEIM and depends on the PEI Services.
DXE_DRIVER	Module is a DXE driver and depends on the EFI Boot Services, EFI Runtime Services, and DXE Service Table.
DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER	Module is a DXE driver and depends on the EFI Boot Services, EFI Runtime Services, and DXE Service Table. The module runs before and after ExitBootServices and produces CreateEvent , EventGroupExitBootServices , and EventGroupVirtualAddressChange . Code written to this module can run in physical or virtual mode.
DXE_SAL_DRIVER	Module is a DXE driver and depends on the EFI Boot Services, EFI Runtime Services, and DXE Service Table. The module runs before and after ExitBootServices and produces CreateEvent , EventGroupExitBootServices , and EventGroupVirtualAddressChange . Code written to this module can run in physical and virtual mode.
DXE_SMM_DRIVER	Module is a DXE driver and depends on the EFI Boot Services, EFI Runtime Services, and DXE Service Table. The module also runs in SMM mode and depends on the SMM Services Table.
UEFI_DRIVER	Module is a UEFI driver and depends on the UEFI Services.
UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER	Module is a UEFI driver and depends on the UEFI Services. The module runs before and after ExitBootServices and produces CreateEvent , EventGroupExitBootServices , and EventGroupVirtualAddressChange . Code written to this module can run in physical or virtual mode.
UEFI_APPLICATION	Module is a UEFI application and depends on the UEFI and Services.
DXE_CORE	Module is the DXE Core.
PEI_CORE	Module is the PEI Core.
USER_DEFINED	Module may be a binary image, in which the user will have an a priori knowledge of its usage.
SMM_CORE	Module is the SMM Core.

Modules

All module references within this document refer to libraries, PI PEIMs, PI DXE drivers, UEFI drivers and UEFI applications. Libraries are mentioned separately, as they are not defined as a UEFI/PI image, but instead are linked to a UEFI/PI image during the build. Please note that a library can be module, there is no Module Type defined for LIBRARY.

Package

A package is a container. It can hold a collection of files for any given set of modules. Packages may contain Source Modules, containing all source files and descriptions of a module, or Binary Modules, containing PI FFS Sections and a description file specific to linking and binary editing of features and attributes or both Binary and Source modules. Multiple modules can also be combined into a package. Multiple Packages can also be Bundled into a single Distribution Package.

Package Developer (PD)

The package developer is responsible for maintaining the contents of a package's declarations, which includes the package's name, description, copyright, licenses, and an optional set of library and module implementations. Packages may also contain elements that are available to the development of new modules by Module Developers. These include library class declarations, industry standard include files, include file extensions, GUID declarations, protocol declarations, PPI declarations, and platform configuration database entry declarations.

Package Distributor (PDist)

The Package Distributor is responsible for creating a distributable version of a package. This involves collecting a set of packages developed by Package Developers which includes modules developed by Module Developers and combine them into a Distribution Package.

Package Surface Area

A complete description of the elements a package provides to support building modules. This includes header files for industry standard specifications, library header files, include file paths within the package, GUID declarations, PPI declarations, Protocol declarations, and Platform Configuration Database element declarations. All of these package elements are available to Module Developers and can be used to describe the Module Surface Area of a module.

PCD

Platform Configuration Database.

PCD C Name

The symbolic name for a PCD Token that follows the ANSI C naming conventions for the name of a variable.

PCD Element

A single configurable element within the Platform Configuration Database, uniquely identified by a Token Space GUID and Token Number.

PCD Token Space GUID

The GUID value associated with a group of PCD Tokens. Using a GUID allows vendors to allocate their own Token Numbers for configuration elements that apply to their own modules, libraries or platforms without a centralized allocator. Within the Distribution Description file, a PCD Token Space GUID is referred to using the PCD Token Space GUID C Name.

PCD Token Space GUID C Name

A symbolic name for a PCD Token Space GUID value that follows the ANSI C naming conventions for the name of a variable.

PCD Token

A 32-bit unsigned integer that, along with the PCD Token Space GUID, uniquely identifies a PCD element. Within the Distribution Description File, a PCD Token is referred to using the PCD C Name.

PEI

Pre-EFI Initialization Phase.

Platform Configuration Database (PCD)

The collection of PCD elements that can be configured when building modules, libraries, or platform firmware images. These elements are identified by a Token Space GUID and Token Number. PCD elements are declared in packages by Package Developers. Module Developers use PCD elements in the design of their modules to increase the portability of their modules to a wider array of platform targets. Platform Integrators set the values of PCD elements based on specific platform requirements. A Platform Integrator has many options when configuring PCDs for a specific platform. They may configure PCD elements to be set to static values at build time. They may also configure PCD elements so the binary image of a Module may be patched prior to integration into platform firmware images. They may also configure PCD elements so the binary image of platform firmware may be patched. They may also configure PCD elements so they can be accessed at runtime through the PCD services described in the PI 1.2 Specification.

Platform Integrator (PI)

The Platform Integrator is responsible for setting all the features required to build a FLASH image and boot a platform. This includes selecting pre-built modules, selecting modules implemented by Module Developers, selecting the library instances required to link the selected modules, setting the platform configuration database entry parameters for all the entries that are used by the selected modules and libraries, and selecting the FLASH layout required to store the pre-built module executables in a FLASH device.

PPI

A PEIM-to-PEIM Interface that is named by a GUID as defined by the PEI CIS.

Protocol

An API named by a GUID as defined by the UEFI specification.

Runtime Services

Interfaces that provide access to underlying platform-specific hardware that might be useful during OS runtime, such as time and date services. These services become active during the boot process but also persist after the OS loader terminates boot services.

SAL

System Abstraction Layer. A firmware interface specification used on Intel® Itanium® Processor-based systems.

SEC

Security Phase is the code that contains the processor reset vector and launches PEI. This phase is separate from PEI because some security schemes require ownership of the reset vector.

UEFI Application

An application that follows the UEFI specification. The only difference between a UEFI application and a UEFI driver is that an application is unloaded from memory when it exits regardless of return status, while a driver that returns a successful return status is not unloaded when its entry point exits.

UEFI Driver

A driver that follows the UEFI specification.

UEFI Specification Version 2.3

Current version of the UEFI specification released by the Unified EFI Forum.

Unified EFI Forum

A non-profit collaborative trade organization formed to promote and manage the UEFI standard. For more information, see www.uefi.org.

WORKSPACE

A project directory on a development system.

The following terms and descriptions are specific to the Module Surface Area defined within this specification.

Feature Flag

Feature flags are used within the source code as well as by a build system.

The feature flags represent how the module is coded. For each combination of feature flags supported by a module's source code, it is possible to produce a different binary surface area. PCD **FEATURE_FLAG** is a Boolean, so the relationship of each module surface area element to a binary can be expressed as a Boolean expression. The lack of a conditional expression implies TRUE, and the source code surface area element will be in all resulting binaries.

The Feature Flag can also be used by the build system to conditionally include or exclude different items (library classes, source files, etc.) from a build.

Consumes

Any item with a Usage Attribute of Consumes means that a module will not function without it. The module will either fail to execute, fail to build or fail to link if the item is not present when needed.

Produces

Any item with a Usage Attribute of Produces means that a module defines this specific instance of the item.

Sometimes_Consumes

Any item with a Usage Attribute of Sometimes_Consumes means that if the item is available, the item will be used, but the module may continue to function if the item is not available.

Sometimes_Produces

Any item with a Usage Attribute of Sometimes_Produces means that a module defines this specific instance of the item under certain conditions or under different execution paths.

ToStart

The protocol is required by the driver binding Start() function to make Start() succeed.

ByStart

The protocol is produced by the driver binding Start() function if it succeeds.

1.4 Target Audience

This document is intended for persons doing Package Development and Package Distributors.

1.5 Conventions Used in This Document

This document uses the typographic and illustrative conventions described below.

Note that each of the types with the prefix 'xs:' are built in to XML Schema. Full definitions of these simple types can be found online, <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-0/#CreatDt>.

1.5.1 Table Conventions

Table 2. Base XML Data Types

Name	Description
xs:boolean	A string containing 'true' or 'false'
xs:decimal	A string containing numbers followed by a period followed by numbers Example: 1.23
xs:integer	A string that represents a signed 32-bit integer. The range is from -2147483648 to 2147483647
xs:nonNegativeInteger	A string that represents a positive 32-bit integer. The range is from 0 to 4294967295
xs:string	The set of finite-length sequences of characters that match Char
Char	#x9 #xA #xD [#x20-#xD7FF] [#xE000-#xFFFF] [#x10000-#x10FFFF]
xs:normalizedString	The set of strings that do not contain the carriage return (#xD), line feed (#xA) or tab (#x9) characters.
xs:NCName	A string that start with a letter or an underscore and is followed by any combination of letters, digits, periods, hyphens, and underscores. No whitespace characters are allowed.
xs:anyURI	A finite-length character sequences which are legal URIs according to [RFC 2396], as amended by [RFC 2732]
xs:language	The language code entered must conform to RFC 1766.
xs:Nmtoken	A string that contains any combination of letters, digits, periods, hyphens, and underscores. No whitespace characters are allowed.

Table 3. Value Types

Name	Description
xs:hexBinary	A string that contains any number of hexadecimal characters (0-9a-fA-F)* Example: F0040001
HexNumber	This simple type extends xs:hexBinary with a '0x' prefix. Example: 0xF0040001
Md5Sum	A string of 32 hexadecimal characters that does NOT start with "0x."
CFormatGuid	A string containing a GUID in C data format, either new or simple style. Example Simple: {0xyyyyyyyy, 0xyyyy, 0xyyyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy} Example New: {0xyyyyyyyy, 0xyyyy, 0xyyyy, {0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy, 0xyy}} Where yy is a hexadecimal digit, whitespace characters are ignored.
RegistryFormatGuid	A string containing a GUID in registry format. Example: AF0DDA2E-EA83-480b-B2CE-FC0BB2F894C2
GuidValue	A string containing a GUID formatted as a RegistryFormatGuid.
GuidCName or CName	A C variable format word that can be used as a cross reference to

Table 4. Enumeration Types

Name	Description
Archs	<p>A string that contains a single Arch type. The Arch type is restricted to the following set:</p> <p>IA32</p> <p>X64</p> <p>IPF</p> <p>EBC</p> <p>ARM</p> <p>Pattern = [A-Z]([a-zA-Z0-9])*</p>
FamilyType	<p>A string that contains a single Family type. The Family type is restricted to the following set:</p> <p>MSFT</p> <p>GCC</p> <p>Pattern = [A-Z]([a-zA-Z0-9])*</p>
GuidTypes	<p>A string that contains a single GUID type. The GUID types are restricted to the following set:</p> <p>Event</p> <p>File</p> <p>FV</p> <p>GUID</p> <p>HII</p> <p>HOB</p> <p>SystemTable</p> <p>TokenSpaceGuid</p> <p>UNDEFINED</p> <p>Variable</p>

Name	Description
ModuleType	<p>A string that contains a single module type. Module types are restricted to the following set:</p> <p>BASE SEC PEI_CORE PEIM DXE_CORE DXE_DRIVER DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER DXE_SAL_DRIVER DXE_SMM_DRIVER SMM_CORE UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION USER_DEFINED</p> <p>Pattern = [A-Z]([a-zA-Z0-9])*</p>
PcdDatumType	<p>A string that contains a single PCD Data Type. PCD Data Types are restricted to the following set:</p> <p>UINT8 UINT16 UINT32 UINT64 VOID* BOOLEAN</p>
PcdItemTypes	<p>A string that contains one PCD Entry item types. The PCD Entry item types are restricted to the following set:</p> <p>FeaturePcd FixedPcd PatchPcd Pcd PcdEx</p>

Distribution Packaging Specification

Name	Description
SupportedOs	A string that contains one Supported Operating System type. The Supported Operating System types are restricted to the following set: Win32 Win64 RedHat32 RedHat64 SuSE32 SuSE64 Generic GenericWin GenericNix Pattern = [A-Z]([a-zA-Z0-9])*

Table 5. List Types

Name	Description
ArchListType	<p>A string that contains one or more CPU architectures separated by spaces. The CPU architectures are restricted to the following set:</p> <p>IA32 X64 IPF EBC ARM</p> <p>Pattern = [A-Z]([a-zA-Z0-9])*</p>
GuidListType	<p>A string that contains one or more GUID types separated by spaces. The GUID types are restricted to the following set:</p> <p>Event File FV GUID HII HOB SystemTable TokenSpaceGuid UNDEFINED Variable</p>
ModuleListType	<p>A string that contains one or more module types separated by spaces. The module types are restricted to the following set:</p> <p>BASE SEC PEI_CORE PEIM DXE_CORE DXE_DRIVER DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER DXE_SAL_DRIVER DXE_SMM_DRIVER SMM_CORE UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION UNDEFINED USER_DEFINED</p> <p>Pattern = [A-Z]([a-zA-Z0-9])*</p>

Name	Description
PcdItemListType	A string that contains one or more PCD Entry item types separated by spaces. The PCD Entry item types are restricted to the following set: FeaturePcd FixedPcd PatchPcd Pcd PcdEx

Table 6. Table Description

Description	This is the description of this element
Required	YES NO – Is this element required by the parent element
Data Type	[Attribute Element] – [Complex Data Type]
Data Constraints	What are the limitations or possible values for this element
Examples	Either N/A or a hypothetical example

1.5.2 Pseudo-Code Conventions

Pseudo code is presented to describe algorithms in a more concise form. None of the algorithms in this document are intended to be compiled directly. The code is presented at a level corresponding to the surrounding text.

In describing variables, a list is an unordered collection of homogeneous objects. A queue is an ordered list of homogeneous objects. Unless otherwise noted, the ordering is assumed to be First In First Out (FIFO).

Pseudo code is presented in a C-like format, using C conventions where appropriate. The coding style, particularly the indentation style, is used for readability and does not necessarily comply with an implementation of the Extensible Firmware Interface Specification.

1.5.3 Typographic Conventions

This document uses the typographic and illustrative conventions described below:

This document uses the typographic and illustrative conventions described below:

Plain text The normal text typeface is used for the vast majority of the descriptive text in a specification.

[Plain text \(blue\)](#) In the online help version of this specification, any [plain text](#) that is underlined and in blue indicates an active link to the cross-reference. Click on the word to follow the hyperlink. Note that these links are *not* active in the PDF of the specification.

Bold In text, a **Bold** typeface identifies a processor register name. In other instances, a **Bold** typeface can be used as a running head within a paragraph.

Italic In text, an *Italic* typeface can be used as emphasis to introduce a new term or to indicate a manual or specification name.

BOLD Monospace Computer code, example code segments, and all prototype code segments use a **BOLD Monospace** typeface with a dark red color. These code listings normally appear in one or more separate paragraphs, though words or segments can also be embedded in a normal text paragraph.

Bold Monospace In the online help version of this specification, words in a Bold Monospace typeface that is underlined and in blue indicate an active hyperlink to the code definition for that function or type definition. Click on the word to follow the hyperlink. Note that these links are *not* active in the PDF of the specification. Also, these inactive links in the PDF may instead have a Bold Monospace appearance that is underlined but in dark red. Again, these links are not active in the PDF of the specification.

Italic Monospace In code or in text, words in *Italic Monospace* indicate placeholder names for variable information that must be supplied (i.e., arguments).

Plain Monospace In code, words in a Plain Monospace typeface that is a dark red color but is not bold or italicized indicate pseudo code or example code. These code segments typically occur in one or more separate paragraphs.

See the references sections in the *UEFI 2.1 Specification* for a complete list of the additional documents and specifications that are required or suggested for interpreting the information presented in this document:

The *UEFI Specification* is available from the UEFI web site <http://www.uefi.org/specs>.

See the references sections in the UEFI Platform Initialization Specification Version 1.0 for a complete list of the additional documents and specifications that are required or suggested for interpreting the information presented in this document:

The *UEFI Platform Initialization Specification* is available from the UEFI web site <http://www.uefi.org/specs>.

UEFI and PI components made of different collections of related objects are called packages. Individual packages may be updated without having to update other packages, so as tools, or architecture specifications are updated, only the relevant packages need to be updated. If an architecture specification changes, the corresponding distribution package containing the architecture definition package can be downloaded, without downloading an entire development tree. If new tools are released, a new tools distribution package can be distributed without disturbing the contents of the other packages. As industry standards evolve, updates to the standards (typically defined in header files) can be released, again, without having to get an entirely new tree.

This document uses two different concepts for the term “package.” The first is a distribution package; for clarity, this document will use the term “distribution” when referring to a distribution package. The other usage of package is a collection of related objects – Includes, Libraries and Modules. A distribution package may contain zero or more of the packages, while each package may contains zero or more modules. (Why zero? – A package can consist of nothing but industry standard headers. While most industry standard headers may need to provide library routines, there is no requirement for providing them.) Each package typically has it’s own folder or directory.

2.1 Purpose

In order to provide a consistent process for sharing drivers and code, this specification introduces the concept of a Package Surface Area and a Module Surface Area which document the surface area of packages and modules. These surface areas include many concepts from the UEFI Specification and and PI Specification as well as a Platform Configuration Database.

The Platform Configuration Database is the collection of elements that can be configured when building modules, libraries, or platform firmware images. These elements are identified by a Token Space GUID and Token Number. PCD elements are declared in packages by Package Developers. Modules Developers use PCD elements in the design of their modules to increase the portability of their modules to a wider array of platform targets. Platform Integrators set the values of PCD elements based on specific platform requirements. A Platform Integrator has many options when configuring PCDs for a specific platform. They may configure PCD elements to be set to static values at build time. They may also configure PCD elements so the binary image of a Module may be patched prior to integration into platform firmware images. They may also configure PCD elements so the binary image of platform firmware may be patched. They may also configure PCD elements so they can be accessed at runtime through the PCD services described in the PI Specification.

A PCD element is identified by a Token Space GUID and a Token Number. The Token Space GUID is a GUID value that is associated with a group of PCD Tokens. Using a GUID value allows vendors to allocate their own Token Numbers for configuration elements that apply to their own modules, libraries or platforms without a centralized allocator. Token Space GUID values must be declared in a surface area for a package along with a symbolic name for the GUID. This symbolic name is called the Token Space GUID C Name. Token Number must also be declared in the surface

Distribution Packaging Specification

area for a package along with the symbolic name for the PCD Token. This symbolic name is called the PCD C Name. If a module uses a PCD element, then that usage is described in the surface area of the module, and the PCD element in the surface area of a module is identified using the symbolic name for the Token Space GUID and the symbolic name for the PCD Token. This means the module surface area only references the Token Space GUID C Name and the PCD C Name. This is much easier to read and maintain than the GUID values and Token Numbers.

The surface area of a package is the complete description of the elements a package provides to support building modules. These elements include:

- Header files for industry standard specifications
- Library header files
- Include file paths within the package
- GUID declarations
- PPI declarations
- Protocol declarations
- Platform Configuration Database element declarations

The surface area of a module is a full description of all of the elements a module produces and/or consumes that allow it to be integrated into a platform firmware image and executed as expected. These elements included:

- Binary file names
- Source file names
- Packages
- Libraries
- Protocols
- PPIs
- GUIDs
- Events
- Platform Configuration Database elements
- UEFI variables
- UEFI System Configuration Tables
- Boot modes
- HOBs
- HII packages
- External variable and function names, including the module's entry point

Binary modules must minimally describe the dependencies required for a the module to execute correctly. Source modules must minimally describe their dependencies so that it can be compiled and linked into a binary module. Modules may also have runtime dependencies that must be satisfied in order for the module to execute correctly.

The surface area of a module describes how a module can be integrated quickly into a new project. The surface area descriptions can be broken down into source, binary, and library integration.

Key module surface area features include:

- The module surface area describes all things visible to the system from a binary module.
- The module surface area describes information needed to construct and link modules.
- The module surface area does not describe everything in the source code of a module.
 - This is very complicated and C source code does a good job of this.
- A module must inherit the module surface area of the library linked to that module.
- The module surface area describes only the library class and not the library instance.
 - The library instance linked to a module or library is determined at link time.
 - The complete module surface area of a module can only be determined after library instances have been selected.

The challenge with integrating at a source level is that the surface area of the module might contain conditional statements that define different binaries based on the build options that are chosen. A binary needs to describe how it was built; it is not necessary to describe how it could be built if no source were included. If a binary supports patching, the binary also needs to describe the option and how to patch it, while the source surface area would need to describe only the option.

While it's possible to categorize a library as either a source or binary integration point, subtle differences warrant libraries having their own category. The primary difference is that libraries are often included into modules. This means the consumer of a library must inherit the module surface area of the libraries linked to the module.

One of the biggest challenges with the module surface area will be making the initial description correct and maintaining this correctness as the module is maintained. For this reason, the build environment should be strongly tied to the surface area description. For example, if you don't have a HOB element in the module's surface area description, using HOBs would prevent the module from compiling until the surface area description was updated. A large number of the surface area grammar elements are GUIDs, so tying compile time GUID resolution to a module surface area would go a long way toward making sure the surface area is always defined correctly. It's not practical to make a 1:1 mapping between the surface area grammar and making the module compile, but having a 60%-80% mapping will give the developer the mind set of updating the surface area description when changes are made to the driver.

2.2 Surface Area Description

The surface area consists of the following parts:

Usage Description

Describes how the element is used.

Element

Describes the surface area element.

Conditional

Optional definitions of what PCD feature flags this element is valid for.

Default

An optional, recommended default value for the element. This is generally used by the platform integrator as a guide in selecting what value should be used on a given platform for a given PCD value.

Help Text

Each surface area element can optionally include help text.

The usage description defines how an element is coded or used by a module. The usage includes production or consumption and whether the element is always or only sometimes used by the driver. The element describes exactly what the module is producing or consuming.

The optional conditional statement can be used to qualify the surface area statement to be valid only if the module is built a certain way. If no conditional exists, it is assumed to be TRUE, and the surface area statement is valid for all ways the module can be built. The conditional statement is a Boolean expression of PCD Feature Flags.

2.2.1 Conditional Surface Area Entries

Some surface area entries might be in the source code, but not in the resulting binary. The module surface area of the source code describes what's in the source code, while the module surface area of a binary describes what and how the module was built. If a module does different things for different processor types, the surface areas of the resulting binaries are different. Thus, it's important to think of the module surface area in terms of the source code and the binary. The surface area description for the source code is easy — if an element is in any of the source code, it must be in the module surface area for the source code. The module surface area for a binary is more complex. The build system can construct code for different processor architectures in radically different ways, if needed, and the resulting module surface area for the binary needs to reflect only what was constructed.

It's also possible that a PCD Feature Flag could cause surface area elements that are in the source code to not be in the resulting binary.

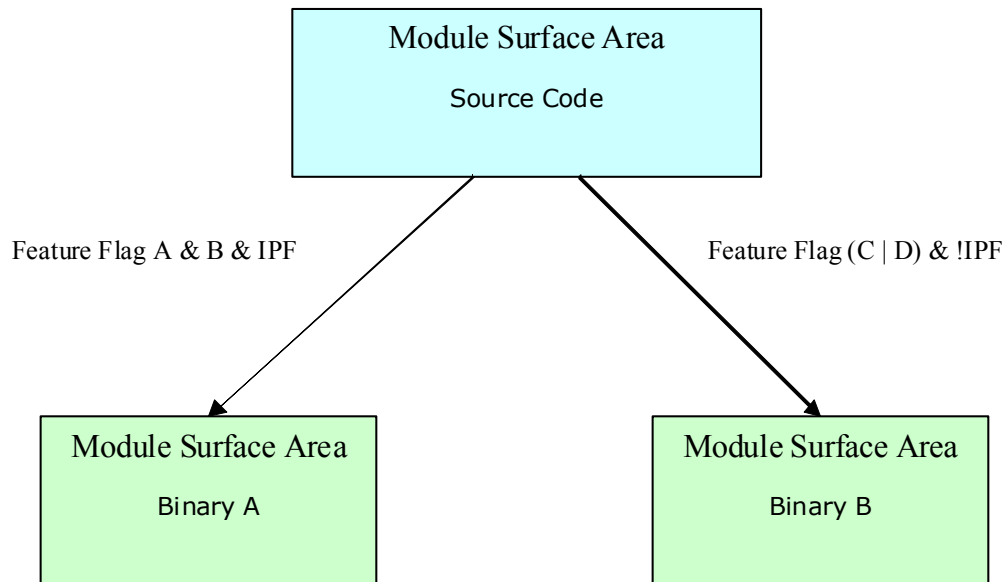


Figure 1. Module Surface Area Differs for Different Binaries

Figure 1 illustrates how the surface area is different for the source code and the different binaries that can be produced from common source code. In the above example, the surface area of the binary differs based on processor type: for Itanium® Processor binaries you get surface area A, and for non-Itanium® Processor binaries you get surface area B. A and B are both subsets of the source code surface area, as only things that are in the source code can end up in the binary.

The feature flags must represent how the module is coded. For each combination of feature flags supported by a module's source code, it is possible to produce a different binary surface area.

PCD "FeaturePcd" is a Boolean, so the relationship of each module surface area element to a binary can be expressed as a Boolean expression. The lack of a conditional expression implies TRUE, and the source code surface area element will be in all resulting binaries.

2.2.2 Surface Area Inheritance

The module surface area for a driver describes how the driver is coded. The previous section describes how PCD "FeaturePcd" can impact the resulting surface area of the binary produced when the module is compiled and linked. The surface area for the binary must also inherit surface area elements from any linked library instance.

The surface area for a driver specifies only the class of the library.

2.2.3 Source Code Surface Area

The distinguishing feature of the source code surface area is that it outlines a set of options in the form of PCD-based build flags. The runtime surface area is a proper subset of the build-time surface area.

2.2.4 Informational Surface Area

Example: PCD:UsbEnable flag. There may be a driver that does not use the UsbEnable flag as this driver is an UEFI driver that produces USB interfaces. If the platform has no USB, this driver should not be included in the build. There may be other drivers, such as ICH USB, that need to conditionally compile to not program certain registers based on UsbEnable. The ICH driver would define the PCD flag in the normal location. The UEFI USB driver would describe an informational surface that was a parallel of the build-time surface area to help people whether it should be included in the build.

2.2.5 Conditional Descriptions

PCD entries of the type build can also be used to describe the surface area in a conditional way. All PCD values must be available to all build tools, usable in all build and packaging files. This is in addition to the requirement to include PCD entries as static data, dynamic data, or binary patchable data in a module.

2.2.6 Binary Surface Area

The binary surface area defines the surface area of a module when it executes its code. The binary surface area is a subset of the source code surface area. Descriptions of possible build options are not needed, and only elements consistent with the current compile options are defined.

2.2.7 Hardware Surface Area

This area is not fully explored in this version of the specification. Areas of interest include:

- "Defining hardware settings for CMOS (and other indexed I/O devices), I/O, memory mapped, and PCI hardware devices.
- "Usage to define which base registers a driver assumes are already programmed in a chip that is being programmed.
- "May be used to define which PCI devices a UEFI or DXE driver could support.

2.3 Surface Area Grammar

The surface area grammar defines how a module either produces or consumes public interfaces or elements. There are seven universal usage descriptions (see Usage Description table below) that can be applied to any of the grammar elements. Usage descriptions define how a module either produces or consumes a public interface or element. A module may require (**CONSUMES**), conditionally require (**SOMETIMES_CONSUMES**), or need an interface to bind the driver using the UEFI driver model (**TO_START**). A module may always produce (**PRODUCES**), conditionally produce

(**SOMETIMES_PRODUCES**), or produce an interface following the UEFI driver model (**BY_START**).

Table 7. Usage Description

Name	Description
CONSUMES	Element is required for the driver to function. This means the element is part of the dependency expression of a module if the element represents a PPI or Protocol. For the most part, any GUID, Protocol, PPI or PCD that doesn't install (PRODUCES) something will be one form of CONSUMES.
SOMETIMES_CONSUMES	Element is consumed by the driver only if the element exists.
PRODUCES	Element is always produced (installed) by the driver
SOMETIMES_PRODUCES	Element is conditionally produced by the driver
TO_START	Protocol is required by driver binding Start() function to make Start() succeed.
BY_START	Protocol is produced by driver binding Start() function if it succeeds.

PEI and DXE drivers define their dependencies in the terms of the PPIs or protocols that they require to be present in the system before the given module would be executed. While this works well for ordering the execution order of modules it is not a sufficient description to easily port a module into a new project. The grammar defined in the table below, can be used to define which public interfaces a module produces or consumes. Each element of the grammar can be clarified by combining it with a usage description.

For each element, Table 8 gives the type of name required to specify the instance of the element and a description of the element.

Table 8. Surface Area Grammar Summary

Element	Name Type	Description
Package	GUID	Packages are the basic unit of source code and binary module distribution. A single package can imply (depend on) other packages. Only the leaf package needs to be specified in this case. Packages are named by GUID (and version.) Packages generally make include files and libraries available to modules.
LibraryClass	Keyword	Defines a class of libraries that provide similar features (prototypes are defined in a library class header file provided by a package.) There may be more than one library instance that can provide the feature. (See Libraries.)
Libraries	GUID	A module needs to explicitly state the library functions it uses (by including the library class header file that contains the function prototypes.) A Keyword specifies the class of the library; while a GUID specifies the name of the library instance. Multiple libraries can support the same class, so it's not possible to declare the library instance in the source code. The build environment must know the mapping of library classes to actual library instances. The library instances are selected by the Platform Integrator. Library Instances always provide (PRODUCES) library functions, they may required (CONSUMES or SOMETIMES_CONSUMES) other library functions in order to function.
Protocol	GUID	Specifies whether a protocol named by GUID is CONSUMES , SOMETIMES_CONSUMES , PRODUCES , or SOMETIMES_PRODUCES .
ProtocolNotify	GUID	Specifies whether a module requires or consumes a protocol, named by a GUID, via a register protocol notify mechanism. Valid usage can only be SOMETIMES_CONSUMES .
Ppi	GUID	Specifies whether a PPI named by GUID is CONSUMES , SOMETIMES_CONSUMES , PRODUCES , or SOMETIMES_PRODUCES .
PpiNotify	GUID	Specifies whether a module requires or consumes a PPI, named by GUID, via a register protocol notify mechanism. . Valid usage can only be SOMETIMES_CONSUMES .
Event (Create)	GUID	Module has an event that is waiting to be signaled (CONSUMES or SOMETIMES_CONSUMES .) The event is named by GUID. UEFI 2.0 added CreateEventEx and maps the existing EFI events back to GUIDs. EVENT_GROUP_GUID EVENT_TYPE_PERIODIC_TIMER EVENT_TYPE_RELATIVE_TIMER

Element	Name Type	Description
Event (Signal)	GUID	Module will signal all events in an event group (PRODUCES or SOMETIMES_PRODUCES .) Event groups are named by GUID just like CreateEvent .
FileName	GUID	FV Filename GUID.
GUID	GUID	A GUID that is not described by one of the other types in this table.
Pcd.\$(database)	PCD Item:{Type}	Platform Configuration Database (PCD) represents a set of GUIDed databases containing sets of items. Packages publish PCD basenames. A module can be built with a hard-coded value for an Item, with the Item being dynamic, or with the Item being a value that can be binary patched. \$(database) is a GUID. No GUID implies the default PCD database.
	{Type}	Description
	FeaturePcd	The PCD Item represents a feature flag for the module. Features can be selected only at build time. Items of type FeaturePcd are used to conditionally construct a module surface area that is produced as a result of the build. A FeaturePcd must be a Boolean.
	FixedPcd	PCD Item is only a build-time option and can not be Dynamic or binary patched into the module (PatchPcd).
	PatchPcd	Module Surface Area for Source Code: PCD Item {Type} is set to a default value at build time and the binary of the module can be patched to update the value. FixedPcd implies the build assigns a value when the module is compiled. PatchPcd implies the build patches the module binary as part of the build option. The PatchPcd is most useful if you don't have source code to a module that you are including in the build.
		Module Surface Area for Binary: The binary must also describe the location within the binary to patch. The surface area must describe the file offset into the uncompressed PE32+ image to associate with the PCD entry. This can be a UINT32 (max PE32+ image size) offset. It may also be useful to specify the label name in the image of the PCD entry.
	Pcd	Module Surface Area for Source Code: This dynamic form implies the source code contains a macro that will be resolved via a build option into FixedPcd , PatchPcd , or Pcd . If no {Type} is present, it defaults to Pcd . This allows the user of the module (Platform Integrator) to pick the type as the module is coded to allow all three.

Element	Name Type	Description
		Module Surface Area for Binary: PCD Item {Type} is found via a PCD PPI in PEI or PCD protocol. The token that matches the PCD entry is either generated by the build (only unique to the build) or is from the default database.
	PcdEx	PCD Item {Type} is found via PCD PPI in PEI or PCD protocol in DXE. Any PCD token database is supported.
Variable	GUID:String{offset}	An EFI variable described by a GUID string pair. No {offset} value implies the entire variable is used.
	Byte	The first {offset} entry represents the byte offset to the start of the data. The names Byte is not part of the syntax and actual numbers must be used.
SystemTable	GUID	An EFI system table entry identified by a GUIDed system table is CONSUMES , SOMETIMES_CONSUMES , PRODUCES , or SOMETIMES_PRODUCES by a module.
ModuleType	ModuleType	Type of module being developed. An instance of a library can support more than one ModuleType.
BootMode	BootMode	A module uses BootMode to define the boot modes it can set (PRODUCES or SOMETIMES_PRODUCES) or the boot modes it supports (SOMETIMES or SOMETIMES_CONSUMES .) Not having this element implies no boot mode is set and all boot modes are supported.
Hob	HobType	Represents a HOB that is being produced or consumed. A HobType of GUID_EXTENSION requires that the name of the GUID being used is also required.
FormSet	GUID	IFR form set was added (PRODUCES or SOMETIMES_PRODUCES) by this module via the HII protocol.
Extern	C Identifier Name	Libraries can depend on externally defined symbols.

2.4 Distribution

A Distribution Package File is a file (ZIP format) that contains two files: a Distribution Description File (XML format) and a Distribution Content File (ZIP format). Installations and updates using these Distribution Package Files follow rules to prevent package collisions and permit relocating packages (and modules) to different directory names during an installation.

The Distribution Description File provides a description of the content provided by the Distribution Content File. The content described includes every package, module and tool, as well as any miscellaneous items. Additionally, the package and module surface area descriptions within the Distribution Package Description File document any dependencies and describe how a module is coded, what resources the module produces or consumes, and, in the case of binary modules, how the binaries in the module were built.

2.5 Tracking

Packages and all modules within any given package are identified using GUID values and VERSION numbers. The surface area descriptions use these GUID and VERSION values to describe dependencies. If a module depends on a specific package, the package's GUID version should be specified in the module's package dependencies section to identify the package. If the module is coded so that it will not depend on a specific version of a package, the VERSION can be omitted. However, if a module requires a specific version of a package to satisfy a dependency, then both the GUID and VERSION of the package must be listed. If VERSION is omitted and there are more than one packages with the same GUID installed in the workspace the package with the highest VERSION value will be used.

Additionally, this document introduces the concept of modules that are coded against classes of libraries, rather than individual library instances. This method permits the platform integrator to select specific instances of libraries that satisfy the library classes a module was coded against.

Distribution Package File

The Distribution Package File format is the format of the file used in distributions. Instead of building or specifying an entirely new archive format, the Distribution Package File simply extends a widely accepted industry standard ZIP file format. The ZIP format already supports most of the features or capabilities required by Distribution Package Files, including:

- Compression
- Cross-platform support
- Encryption

The Distribution Description File is a meta-data file that all distributions are required to contain. The Distribution Description File is an XML formatted file with a .pkg file extension that resides in the root directory of the Distribution Package File.

The Distribution Package File also holds all of the Include files, Libraries and or Modules. These files are contained in the Distribution Content File, a ZIP formatted file with a .content file extension that resides in the root directory of the Distribution Package File. Keeping the meta-data information about what is being distributed and the content separate provides a clean separation between the two distinct elements.

3.1 Distribution Requirements

The Distribution Package File containing the Distribution Description File and the Distribution Content File must have the file extension of **.dist**.

A Distribution Package File may contain:

1. Zero or more packages
2. Zero or more modules.
3. Zero or more tools.
4. Additional files that do not match either a package surface area declaration, module surface area or tools.

The Distribution Package File consists of two parts:

- The Distribution Description File, which is the XML formatted data describing the Distribution Content.
- The Distribution Content File, which is the the compressed package tree.

Any additional files within the Distribution Content File may be ignored.

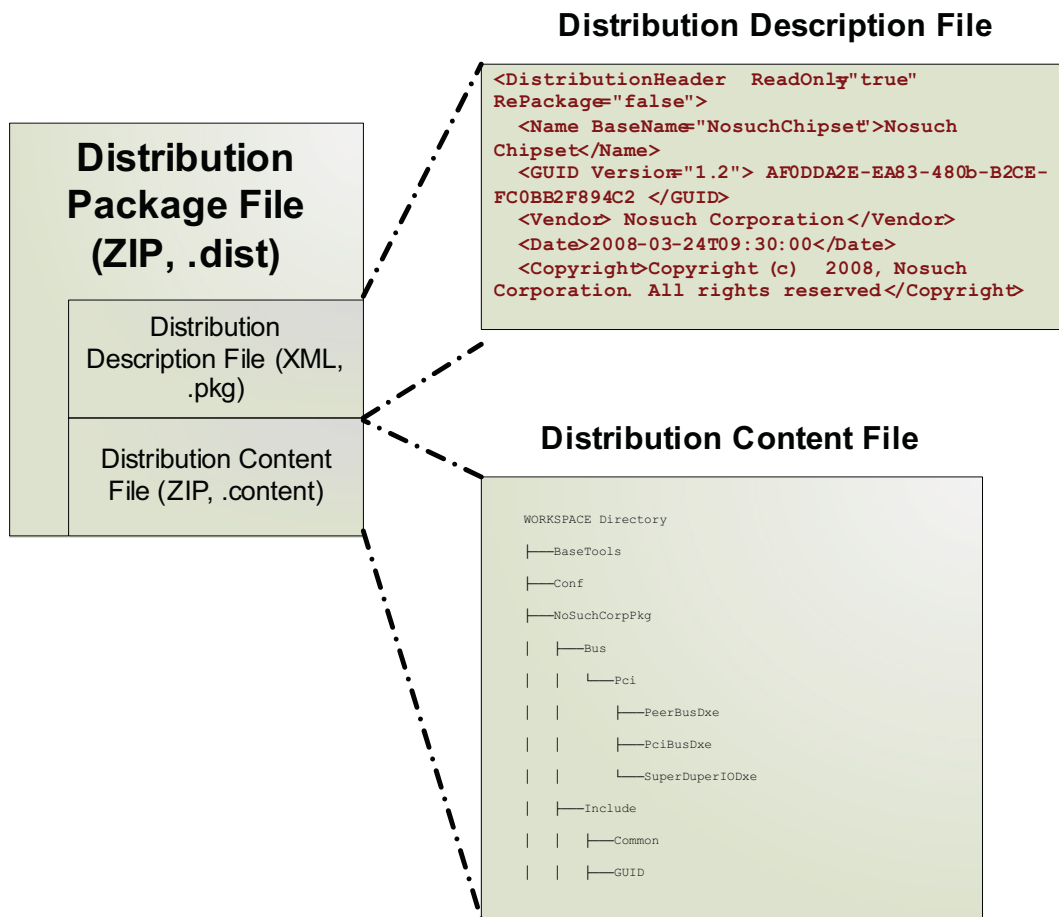


Figure 2. Distribution Package File layout

3.1.1 Creating a Distribution Package File

Normally, a Distribution Package File is created from a directory tree located in a directory on a developer's workstation. The typical directory tree is a hierarchy of directories and files that are a collection of declarations and modules. This directory tree may contain an Includes directory, a Library directory which has library modules (instances) directories beneath it, and module directories that contain drivers, applications and/or other non-library modules. Figure 3, below, shows an example directory tree for the NoSuchCorpPkg.

```

WORKSPACE Directory
+---BaseTools
+---Conf
+---NoSuchCorpPkg
|
|   +---Bus
|   |
|   |   +---Pci
|   |   |
|   |   |   +---PeerBusDxe
|   |   |   +---PciBusDxe
|   |   |   +---SuperDuperIODxe
|   |
|   |   +---Include
|   |   |
|   |   |   +---Common
|   |   |   +---GUID
|   |   |   +---Library
|   |   |   +---Protocol
|   |
|   |   +---Library
|   |   |
|   |   |   +---NoSuchHookStatusCodeLib
|   |   |   +---SmmRuntimeDxeReportStatusCodeLib
|   |
|   |   +---Universal
|   |   |
|   |   |   +---DualSegmentCfgPei
|   |   |   +---DualSegmentCfgDxe
|   |   |   +---StatusCode
|   |   |   |
|   |   |   |   +---Dxe
|   |   |   |   +---Pei
|   |
|   +---MdePkg
+---MdeModulePkg

```

Figure 3. NoSuchCorpPkg Directory Tree

A Distribution Package File may be created by the following steps:

1. Determine the set of files that will be distributed, including packages, modules, tools, and miscellaneous content.
2. Create the Distribution Description File, and complete the Distribution Header Information.
3. For each package that will be included in the Distribution Content File,
 - If a supported "declaration" file, exists for the package, it can be used as a starting point - otherwise, the information will need to be filled in manually.
 - Specify any Library Classes, GUIDS, Protocols or PPIs that are declared by header files in the package.
 - List the reference names of the modules that are to be included in this package - every reference name provided in this list must have a corresponding module surface area section in this file.
 - Specify any PCDs that are declared within the package. Typically, these are defined in a specification that uniquely identifies the declared PCDs, i.e., a NoSuch Package Specification would define the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName: gEfiNoSuchPkgTokenSpaceGuid (the GUID is for this is declared in step b, above) and individual PCD information for each PCD in the spec. Each PCD must be declared in every PCD section type that it might be coded for, i.e., PcdsFixedAtBuild, PcdsPatchableInModule and PcdsDynamic.
 - Specify the location of any Include folders that are provided by this package.
 - Include all top level header files that are to be included in the Include folders. For example: "Include/Ppi/CpuIo.h"

Distribution Packaging Specification

- Add any other package files that are to be included and not listed in e. Module information is handled separately, so do not include them here. Listing the supported declaration file is not required. Test "platform" files, used for testing a build of modules that are part of a package may be included for reference.
 - Add the package information to the Distribution Description File.
4. For each module that will be included in the Distribution Content File,
 - If a supported module description file exists for the module, it can be used as a starting point, otherwise, the information will need to be entered manually.
 - Complete the Module header information.
 - Include all the files referred to by the module description file. Add filenames to either the SourceFiles or BinaryFiles section as appropriate, using file paths that are relative to the root of the module. For example: "Ia32/CpuPause.asm"
 - Include all files that are part of a module, but not listed in the module description file. Listing the module description file is not required.
 - Add the module information to the Distribution Description File.
 5. For all tools that are going to be distributed,
 - Complete the Tool section header information
 6. For any thing not listed in steps 2, 3 or 4,
 - Complete the MiscellaneousFiles section
 - Complete a File entry for each file that will be included in the distribution not already entered.
 - Complete any additional information for the MiscellaneousFiles section using freeform text or XML for the content.
 7. Create the Distribution Package File.
 - Generate the Distribution Content File from the content.
 - Compute the MD5 sum of the Distribution Content and update the Signature field in the Distribution Description File's header.
 - Add the Distribution Description File and Distribution Content File to the Distribution Package File.

3.1.2 Installing a Distribution Package File

This section covers the general steps need to install a Distribution Package File on a developer's workstation. Tools may be required to have an a priori knowledge of the developer's development project space.

1. The user may need to select a build meta data format for generating build specific meta-data.
2. The tool need to generate a 'database' of content installed in the project space.
3. For each package declaration section
 - Test the dependencies for the declaration section - See Distribution Rules and Definitions, below.
 - Specify an alternate installation location within the project space, if needed.
 - Create the build specific package declaration files, if required.

- Extract any files within this section to the specified location.
 - Update any distribution management "database" to point to a new location - only required if the default path was not used to extract the file(s.)
4. For each module information section,
 - Test the dependencies for the module section - See Distribution Rules and Definitions, below.
 - Specify an alternate installation location within the project space, if needed.
 - Create the build specific module description files, if required.
 - Extract any files within this section to the specified location.
 - Update any distribution management "database" to point to a new location - only required if the default path was not used to extract the file(s.)
 5. For a Tool section,
 - Specify an alternate installation location, if needed.
 - Extract any files within this section to the specified location.
 - Update any distribution management "database" to point to a new location - only required if the default path was not used to extract the file(s.)
 6. For a MiscellaneousFiles section,
 - Specify an alternate installation location, if needed.
 - Extract any files within this section to the specified location.
 - Update any distribution management "database" to point to a new location - only required if the default path was not used to extract the file(s.)
 7. Store the Distribution Description File in a directory as specified by any tools.
 - If an alternate name has been specified, store the file using the alternate name and .pkg extension in a directory as specified by any tools.
 - If no alternate name was provided, and if a Distribution Description File already exists, then rename the Distribution Description File filename with _<Distribution Package GUID> appended prior to the .pkg extension. If the name already exist, ask the user for an alternate name, and use that name instead.

3.1.3 Removing a Distribution

This function will remove the selected distribution package from the project directory.

1. From distribution management "database", select the Distribution Description File that matches the Distribution Package File that will be removed.
2. Test the Package against dependencies specified in all of the supported meta-data infrastructure files in the project.
 - If any build meta-data file requires this package, let the user know that meta-data files require this package, and give them an option to abort the removal. If they choose to continue to remove the package, print the list of meta-data files that depend on the package, and inform the user that a list of dependent meta-data files that are no longer valid is in a file.
3. Remove all files specified in the Distribution Description File using the extracted information if the files were stored in an alternate location.

3.2 Distribution Rules and Definitions

Definitions and rules for creating, installing, updating, and removing distributions within a project WORKSPACE. The terms GUID and PackageGuid in the rules below refer to the value of a GUID. The terms Version and PackageVersion in the rules below refer to a version value.

Table 9. Distribution Rules & Definitions KEY

Letter	Example Definitions
W	A workspace
M	A module
D	A Distribution
P	A package
L	A location
G	Other Distribution
Q	Other Package

1. A module **M** is said to depend upon a package **P**, if and only if there exists a tuple (PackageGuid, PackageVersion) in the set **M->PackageDependencies** for which **P->GUID == PackageGuid**, and if PackageVersion is not empty, then **P->Version == PackageVersion**.
2. A distribution **D** is said to depend on a Distribution **G**, if and only if there is a module in a package in **D** that depends on a package in **G**.
3. A distribution **D** is said to depend on a package **P**, if and only if there is a module **M** contained in **D** that depends on **P**.
4. A distribution **D** may be installed into the WORKSPACE **W**, if and only if for each module **M** in **D**, **M**'s dependencies are met by the packages in **W**.
 - If the dependencies are not met, then no part of distribution **D** will be installed. It is not legal to partially install a distribution into the WORKSPACE.
5. A distribution **D** may be removed from the WORKSPACE **W**, if and only if for each module **M** in WORKSPACE **W**, and for each package **P** in **D**, **M** does not depend on **P**.
 - If there is some dependency on **D**, then no part of **D** may be uninstalled from **W**. It is not legal to partially uninstall a distribution from the WORKSPACE.
6. When installing a distribution **D** into WORKSPACE **W**, for each package **P** in **D**, allow the user to install in **P**'s default location, or choose a new location **L** (which must be unoccupied) within the WORKSPACE. Record this location **L** in the database. Each package **P** in **D** will be recorded in the database, associated with the GUID of **D**, as well as the actual install location **L**. (So we will know which distribution each package belongs to.)
7. When installing a distribution **D** into WORKSPACE **W**, if there exists a package **P** in **W**, and **P** is in **D**, then the user must be prompted to choose a location that does not collide with the location of **P** in WORKSPACE **W**. We will end up with two instances of **P** in **W** at two distinct locations.
8. A distribution **D** may replace a distribution **G** in the WORKSPACE **W**, if and only if for each module **M** contained in **W**, if **M** depends on a package **P**, and **P** is only contained in **G**, then there must exist a package **Q** in **D**, such that the dependency of **M** can be satisfied by **Q**.

- The net effect is that **G** is removed and **D** is installed, in one operation. The normal rules for installing **D** still apply - the dependencies of the modules of **D** must be satisfied. After the replacement, it must be the case that all the modules' dependencies in the WORKSPACE are satisfied.
 - If we find that the replace operation is not permitted, then the user may install **D** and keep **G**. Next, the user may "port" to **D** every package **P** in **G** on which a module **M** in **W** depends. Once all the dependencies can be resolved without the packages in **G** the user can remove **G**.
9. A special case of the above rule is that a distribution **D** may be reinstalled into the WORKSPACE. (This would allow the user to get a fresh copy, or change the location in the WORKSPACE where one or more of the packages of **D** are installed.)
 10. When a distribution **D** is removed from the WORKSPACE **W**, for each package **P** in **D**, we will remove **P** from **W**.
 11. If a package **P** belongs to a distribution **D**, then it is not legal to remove **P** from the WORKSPACE **W** unless **D** is removed from **W**.
 12. A package **P** may be removed from the WORKSPACE, provided there does not exist a distribution **D** that contains **P**. (Newly created or cloned packages will not exist within a distribution, and thus may be removed from the WORKSPACE directly.)
 13. When a distribution **D** is removed from the WORKSPACE, the we will remove all the files in **D** from the WORKSPACE tree. If a file has been modified from the original as installed from the distribution (per md5sum) then the user should be asked if he is "sure" he wants to remove it.
 14. When a distribution is created, a GUID is generated and assigned to the distribution. If a distribution is created from the same components at a later time, it should have the same GUID.
 15. If a package **P** is marked with **P->RePackage==false**, then **P** may not be added to a distribution.
 16. A distribution **D** is identical to a distribution **G**, if and only if **D->GUID == G->GUID and D->Version == G->Version**.
 17. A distribution **D** may be installed into the WORKSPACE **W**, if and only if there is no distribution **G** in **W** such that **D->GUID == G->GUID and D->Version == G->Version**.

Distribution Description XML Schema

The Distribution Description XML Schema defines the contents of a distribution surface area including all associated meta-data. This chapter defines the XML Grammar that is used to describe the contents of the distribution package. This distribution surface area description data resides in the Distribution Description File.

The XML Schema Namespace is <http://www.uefi.org/2012/1.0>.

This and following chapters of the document describe the schema in detail.

The XML Instance Representation for `DistributionPackage` is as follows:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<DistributionPackage xmlns="http://www.uefi.org/2012/1.0"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" >
  <DistributionHeader> ... </DistributionHeader> {1}
  <PackageSurfaceArea> ... </PackageSurfaceArea> {0,}
  <ModuleSurfaceArea> ... </ModuleSurfaceArea> {0,}
  <Tools> ... </Tools> {0,}
  <MiscellaneousFiles> ... </MiscellaneousFiles> {0,}
  <UserExtensions> ... </UserExtensions> {0,}
</DistributionPackage>
```

Table 10. DistributionPackage

Description	This is the root element of the distribution XML schema.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

4.1 DistributionPackage.DistributionHeader

The following is the description of the `DistributionPackage.DistributionHeader` instance:

```

<DistributionHeader
  ReadOnly=" xs:boolean " {0,1}
  RePackage=" xs:boolean " {0,1} >
  <Name
    BaseName=" xs:Nmtoken " {0,1} >
    xs:normalizedString
  </Name> {1}
  <GUID
    Version=" xs:decimal " {1} >
    RegistryFormatGUID
  </GUID> {1}
  <Vendor> xs:normalizedString </Vendor> {1}
  <Date> xs:dateTime </Date> {1}
  <Copyright> xs:string </Copyright> {1}
  <License> xs:string </License> {1}
  <Abstract>
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:normalizedString
  </Abstract> {1,}
  <Description
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:string
  </Description> {0,}
  <Signature> Md5Sum </Signature> {0,1}
  <XmlSpecification> xs:decimal </XmlSpecification> {1}
</DistributionHeader>

```

Table 11. DistributionPackage.DistributionHeader

Description	This is the Header Meta data for the distribution. Most of the content is required by legal departments.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

4.1.1 DistributionHeader:ReadOnly

Table 12. DistributionHeader:ReadOnly

Description	If set to true, all content within this distribution archive should NOT be modified.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:boolean
Data Constraints	Either “ true ” or “ false ” (default)
Examples	ReadOnly="true"

4.1.2 DistributionHeader:RePackage

Table 13. DistributionHeader:RePackage

Description	If set to true, then the distribution and its content may be packaged into another distribution.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:boolean
Data Constraints	Either "true" or "false" (default)
Examples	RePackage="true"

4.1.3 DistributionHeader.Name

Table 14. DistributionHeader.Name

Description	The User Interface Name of the Distribution Package File.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	String value of one or more characters; limited to ASCII printable characters between 0x20 and 0x7f, inclusive.
Examples	<Name> ICH7 Chipset </Name>

4.1.4 DistributionHeader.Name:BaseName

Table 15. DistributionHeader.Name:BaseName

Description	The reference name of the Distribution Package File. This single word name can be used by tools as a keyword or for directory and/or file creation.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:Nmtoken
Data Constraints	String value of one or more characters. No white space characters are permitted.
Examples	Name="P_882" Name="MdePkg"

4.1.5 DistributionHeader.GUID

Table 16. DistributionHeader.GUID

Description	The 128 bit Unique ID of the package. This is used to check if the distribution is already installed. This value must change if the entire distribution archive does not provide backward compatibility.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid

Distribution Packaging Specification

Data Constraints	A string that represents a GUID in registry format.
Examples	<GUID Version="1.2"> AF0DDA2E-EA83-480b-B2CE-FC0BB2F894C2 </GUID>

4.1.6 DistributionHeader.GUID:Version

Table 17. DistributionHeader.GUID:Version

Description	The version of the distribution. It is assumed that the version is used to give information to the user about the distribution, but the tools will use the version of the distribution to compare to the version of another distribution with the same GUID. If the distribution contains backward compatible content, then only this version number will change. The higher the number, the more recent the content.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – xs:decimal
Data Constraints	A decimal value that must include the period character.
Examples	Version="1.2"

4.1.7 DistributionHeader.Vendor

Table 18. DistributionHeader.Vendor

Description	A string identifying who created this distribution package.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	Any string
Examples	<Vendor> Nosuch Corporation </Vendor>

4.1.8 DistributionHeader.Date

Table 19. DistributionHeader.Date

Description	The date and time that this distribution was created.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:dateTime
Data Constraints	YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss[.uuuuu], the 'T' character is used to separate the date from the time, the microsecond entry is optional.
Examples	<Date> 2008-01-01T13:30:44 </Date> <Date>2008-03-24T09:30:00</Date>

4.1.9 DistributionHeader.Copyright

Table 20. DistributionHeader.Copyright

Description	The copyright for this file that is generated by the creator of the distribution. If a derivative work is generated from an existing distribution, then the existing copyright must be maintained, and additional copyrights may be appended to the end of this element. It may also be the primary copyright for all code provided in the distribution.
-------------	--

Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	One or more lines of text.
Examples	<pre><Copyright> Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights reserved. </Copyright></pre>

4.1.10 DistributionHeader.License

Table 21. DistributionHeader.License

Description	A license that describes any restrictions on the use of this distribution. If a derivative work is allowed by the original license and a derivative work is generated from an existing distribution, then the existing license must be maintained, and additional licenses may be appended to the end of this element. It may also be the primary license for all code provided in the Distribution Package File. Alternatively, this may point to a filename that contains the License. The file will be stored in the same location as the Distribution Description File.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	Paragraph or file name. If the filename, then the file must have a file extension of either .txt or .lic, otherwise any number of lines of text.
Examples	<pre><License> This program and the accompanying materials are licensed and made available under the terms and conditions of the BSD License which accompanies this distribution. The full text of the license may be found at: http://opensource.org/licenses/bsd- license.php THE PROGRAM IS DISTRIBUTED UNDER THE BSD LICENSE ON AN AS IS BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. </License> <License> MyLicense.txt </License> <License> NoSuchLicense.lic </License></pre>

4.1.11 DistributionHeader.Abstract

Table 22. DistributionHeader.Abstract

Description	A one line description of the distribution.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	<Abstract> Version 1 of the NoSuchPkg package. </Abstract>

4.1.11.1 DistributionHeader.Abstract:Lang

Table 23. DistributionHeader.Abstract:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

4.1.12 DistributionHeader.Description

Table 24. DistributionHeader.Description

Description	A complete description of the distribution. This description may include the release name of the file, the version of the file, and a complete description of the file contents and/or features including a description of the updates since the previous file release.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<Description> Initial release of the NoSuchPkg, Version 1.0 providing the base data types and libraries for NoSuch UEFI Driver. This includes special libraries for reporting status codes of the driver. </Description>

4.1.12.1 DistributionHeader.Description:Lang

Table 25. DistributionHeader.Description:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

4.1.13 DistributionHeader.Signature

Table 26. DistributionHeader.Signature

Description	MD5sum of the Distribution Content File included in this Distribution Package File.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Md5Sum
Data Constraints	A 128-bit value, specified in hex format (32 characters.) A leading 0x is not permitted.
Examples	<Signature> 09fa8fc7222da9afd9ffd52ba8b73f45 </Signature>

4.1.14 DistributionHeader.XmlSpecification

Table 27. DistributionHeader.XmlSpecification

Description	The XML Schema Specification to which this Distribution Description conforms.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:decimal
Data Constraints	Distribution Description XML Schema version. For this version, the value is 1.1.
Examples	<XmlSpecification> 1.1 </XmlSpecification>

Package Surface Area Description

This section describes the Package Surface Area section of the Distribution Description File. Zero or more of these sections are permitted within the Distribution Description File.

The XML Instance Representation for **DistributionPackage.PackageSurfaceArea** is as follows:

```
<PackageSurfaceArea>
  <Header> ... </Header> {1}
  <ClonedFrom> ... </ClonedFrom> {0,1}
  <LibraryClassDeclarations> ... </LibraryClassDeclarations>
{0,1}
  <IndustryStandardIncludes> ... </IndustryStandardIncludes>
{0,1}
  <PackageIncludes> ... </PackageIncludes> {0,1}
  <Modules> ... </Modules> {0,1}
  <GuidDeclarations> ... </GuidDeclarations> {0,1}
  <ProtocolDeclarations> ... </ProtocolDeclarations> {0,1}
  <PpiDeclarations> ... </PpiDeclarations> {0,1}
  <PcdDeclarations> ... </PcdDeclarations> {0,1}
  <PcdRelationshipChecks> ... </PcdRelationshipChecks> {0,1}
  <MiscellaneousFiles> ... </MiscellaneousFiles> {0,}
  <UserExtensions> ... </UserExtensions> {0,}
</PackageSurfaceArea>
```

Table 28. DistributionPackage.PackageSurfaceArea

Description	This element contains all the information associated with a Package Surface Area
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	The Header element is required. All other elements are optional.
Examples	N/A

5.1 PackageSurfaceArea.Header

The following is the description of the **PackageSurfaceArea.Header** instance:

```

<Header>
  <Name
    BaseName=" xs:Nmtoken " {1} >
    xs:normalizedString
  </Name> {1}
  <GUID
    Version=" xs:decimal " {1} >
    RegistryFormatGuid
  </GUID> {1}
  <Copyright> xs:string </Copyright> {0,1}
  <License> xs:string </License> {0,1}
  <Abstract
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:normalizedString </Abstract> {0,}
  <Description
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:string </Description> {0,}
  <PackagePath> xs:anyURI </PackagePath> {1}
</Header>

```

Table 29. PackageSurfaceArea.Header

Description	This element contains the header information for a Package Surface Area. This includes the name of the package, copyright and licensing information associated with the package.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.1.1 Header.Name

Table 30. Header.Name

Description	The User Interface Name for the package.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	String value of one or more characters.
Examples	<pre> <Name>MDE Package Version 1.00</Name> <Name>NT32 Package Version 2.76</PackageName> </pre>

5.1.2 Header.Name:BaseName

Table 31. Header.Name:BaseName

Description	The reference name of the package. This single word name can be used by tools as a keyword and for directory/file creation.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – xs:Nmtoken
Data Constraints	String value of one or more characters. No white space characters are permitted.
Examples	Name="P_882" Name="MdePkg"

5.1.3 Header.GUID

Table 32. Header.GUID

Description	The 128-bit GUID VALUE that is the unique name of a package. This value must change any time a release of the package does not provide full backward compatibility.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	A string that represents a GUID in registry format. If a package is backwards compatible with a previous release of the same package, then PackageSurfaceArea.Header.GUID element must not be changed, and only the PackageSurfaceArea.Header.GUID:Version attribute should be increased. If a package is not backward compatible with a previous release or a new package is being created, then a new PackageSurfaceArea.Header.GUID must be generated.
Examples	<GUID> AF0DDA2E-EA83-480b-B2CE-FC0BB2F894C2 </GUID>

5.1.4 Header.GUID:Version

Table 33. Header.GUID:Version

Description	The version of this package. The version number must change (incrementally) for every release of a package. Since it is tied to the package GUID, this value may be reset to an initial number, if the GUID changes due to a non-backward compatible release.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – xs:decimal
Data Constraints	A string that contains a decimal number with a dot separator.
Examples	Version="1.00" Version="1.02" Version="3.27"

5.1.5 Header.Copyright

Table 34. Header.Copyright

Description	The copyright for this package if it is different than the copyright of the distribution package. The copyright is generated by the creator of a package. If a derivative work is generated from an existing package, then the existing copyright must be maintained, and additional copyrights may be appended to the end of this element.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A set of one or more copyright statements on one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><Copyright> Copyright (c) 2006, Nosuch Corporation. All rights reserved. </Copyright></code>

5.1.6 Header.License

Table 35. Header.License

Description	A license that describes any restrictions on the use of this package. If a derivative work is allowed by the original license and a derivative work is generated from an existing package, then the existing license must be maintained, and additional licenses may be appended to the end of this element. Alternatively, this may point to a file that will be in the same folder as the package declaration file.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text. If a file, then the file must be an ASCII text file with either a .txt or .lic extension.
Examples	<pre> <License> This program and the accompanying materials are licensed and made available under the terms and conditions of the BSD License which accompanies this distribution. The full text of the license may be found at http://opensource.org/licenses/bsd-license.php THE PROGRAM IS DISTRIBUTED UNDER THE BSD LICENSE ON AN AS IS BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. </License> <License> License.txt </License> </pre>

5.1.7 Header.Abstract

Table 36. Header.Abstract

Description	A one line description of this package if different from the distribution's abstract.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	<Abstract>Headers for NoSuch Development Environment Core (MDE.)</Abstract>

5.1.7.1 Header.Abstract:Lang

Table 37. Header.Abstract:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

5.1.8 Header.Description

Table 38. Header.Description

Description	A complete description of a package. This description may include the release name of the package, the version of the package, and a complete description of the package contents and/or features including a description of the updates since the previous package's release.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<Description> NoSuch Package Version 0.75 that conforms to the NoSuch Package Specification Version 0.75. This package contains all the include files, Protocols, PPIs, GUIDs, Library Classes, and Library instances required to build modules that are compliant with the UEFI/PI Specifications. This package was updated from Version 0.74 and now includes addition Base Library String Functions. </Description>

5.1.8.1 Header.Description:Lang

Table 39. Header.Description:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

5.1.9 Header.PackagePath

Table 40. Header.PackagePath

Description	This is the location (in the Distribution Content File) for the root directory of a package.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:anyURI
Data Constraints	A directory location (in the Distribution Content File.)
Examples	<PackagePath> NoSuchPkg </PackagePath>

5.2 PackageSurfaceArea.ClonedFrom

This section is used to track a package that was cloned (copied from) an existing package.

The following is the description of the **PackageSurfaceArea.ClonedFrom** instance:

```
<ClonedFrom>
  <GUID
    Version=" xs:decimal " {1} >
    RegistryFormatGuid
  </GUID> {1}
</ClonedFrom>
```

Table 41. PackageSurfaceArea.ClonedFrom

Description	If the package sources were copied from an existing package, then this Section can be used to track the lineage.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.2.1 ClonedFrom.GUID

Table 42. ClonedFrom.GUID

Description	If the package sources were copied from an existing package, this is the GUID of the package that was the source of the copy.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	Registry format GUID of the pre-existing package
Examples	<code><GUID Version="1.0"> 27d67720-ea68-48ae-93da-a3a074c90e30 </GUID></code>

5.2.2 ClonedFrom.GUID:Version

Table 43. ClonedFrom.GUID:Version

Description	If the package sources were copied from an existing package, this is the version of the package that was the source of the copy.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – xs:decimal
Data Constraints	Version number of the pre-existing package
Examples	<code>Version="1.0"</code>

5.3 PackageSurfaceArea.LibraryClassDeclarations

This section provides the mapping of Library Class keywords to the header files that define the interfaces and data structures that a library class requires. All Library Class declarations must be unique to the package.

The following is the description of the

PackageSurfaceArea.LibraryClassDeclarations instance:

```
<LibraryClassDeclarations>
  <LibraryClass
    Keyword=" xs:NCName " {1}
    SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
    SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1} >
    <HeaderFile> xs:anyURI </HeaderFile> {1}
    <RecommendedInstance>
      <GUID
        Version=" xs:decimal " {0,1} >
          RegistryFormatGuid
        </GUID> {1}
      </RecommendedInstance> {0,1}
    <HelpText
      Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
        xs:string
      </HelpText> {0,}
    </LibraryClass> {1,}
  </LibraryClassDeclarations>
```

Table 44. PackageSurfaceArea.LibraryClassDeclarations

Description	The list of library classes that the package declares.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.3.1 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass

Table 45. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass

Description	The individual Library Class declared – a keyword and a header file.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.3.2 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:Keyword

Table 46. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:Keyword

Description	Modules may be coded to use a library class header identified by this keyword.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	A string that start with a letter or an underscore and is followed by any combination of letters, digits, periods, hyphens, and underscores. No whitespace is allowed.
Examples	Keyword="BaseLib" Keyword="PrintLib"

5.3.3 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:SupArchList

Table 47. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this Library Class. If this attribute is not specified, then this Library Class may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this Library Class.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]*) *

Distribution Packaging Specification

Examples	<pre>SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"</pre>
----------	--

5.3.4 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:SupModList

Table 48. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:SupModList

Description	Used to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this Library Class. If this attribute is not specified, then this Library Class may be used with all module types. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that have a module type that is a member of the set of module types specified by this element may use this Library Class.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED, SMM_CORE.
Examples	SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"

5.3.5 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.HeaderFile

Table 49. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.HeaderFile

Description	This is element is a single header file that defines the library class calling conventions and format.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:anyURI
Data Constraints	The PackagePath relative path and filename in the Distribution Content Content File for the include file associated with the Library Class.
Examples	<HeaderFile>Include/Library/PeiServicesLib.h</HeaderFile> <HeaderFile> Include/Library/HobLib.h </HeaderFile>

5.3.6 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance

Table 50. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance

Description	The recommended library instance as defined by the creator of the Library Class Header file.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex

Distribution Packaging Specification

Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.3.7 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance.GUID

Table 51. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance.GUID

Description	The GUID of the recommended library instance as defined by the creator of the Library Class Header file. This is a required element. If GUID is specified, and the Version attribute is not, then the algorithm to look up the recommended instance is to find the library instance highest version number and a matching GUID.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	A string that represents a GUID in registry format. Not valid if no RecommendedInf attribute specified.
Examples	<code><GUID>AF0DDA2E-EA83-480b-B2CE-FC0BB2F894C2</GUID></code>

5.3.8 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance.GUID:Version

Table 52. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass:RecommendedInstance.GUID:Version

Description	The version of the recommended library instance as defined by the creator of the Library Class Header file. If this attribute is not specified, then the recommended library instance is the highest version number with a matching GUID.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:decimal
Data Constraints	Unsigned decimal number.
Examples	<code>Version="1.0"</code> <code>Version="2.75"</code>

5.3.9 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.HelpText

Table 53. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.HelpText

Description	A paragraph describing this library class, including usage models and restrictions.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><HelpText> This is the include file for any module of type BASE. Base modules only use types defined via this include file and can be ported easily to any environment. There are a set of base libraries in the NoSuch Package that can be used to implement base modules. </HelpText></code>

5.3.10 LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.HelpText.Lang

Table 54. LibraryClassDeclarations.LibraryClass.HelpText.Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us"

5.4 PackageSurfaceArea.IndustryStandardIncludes

The following is the description of the

PackageSurfaceArea.IndustryStandardIncludes instance:

```

<IndustryStandardIncludes>
  <IndustryStandardHeader>
    <HeaderFile> xs:anyURI </HeaderFile> {1}
    <HelpText
      Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:string
    </HelpText> {0,}
  </IndustryStandardHeader> {1,}
</IndustryStandardIncludes>

```

Table 55. PackageSurfaceArea.IndustryStandardIncludes

Description	This section contains a list of industry standard header files.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.4.1 IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader

Table 56. IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader

Description	This is element is a single industry standard header .
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	Must contain one and only one Header File
Examples	N/A

5.4.2 IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader.HeaderFile

Table 57. IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader.HeaderFile

Description	This is element is a single industry standard header file that maybe used by multiple modules.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:anyURI
Data Constraints	A package relative path and filename (as located in the Distribution Content File) for the include file associated with the Industry standard header file.
Examples	<pre> <HeaderFile>Include/IndustryStandard/Pci.h</HeaderFile> <HeaderFile> Include/IndustryStandard/Acpi.h </HeaderFile> </pre>

5.4.3 IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader.HelpText

Table 58. IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader.HelpText

Description	A paragraph describing this header file, including usage models and restrictions.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><HelpText USC2="false" Lang="en-us"> This file contains the latest ACPI definitions that are consumed by drivers that do not care about ACPI versions.</HelpText></code>

5.4.4 IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader.HelpText:Lang

Table 59. IndustryStandardIncludes.IndustryStandardHeader.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	<code>Lang="en-us"</code>

5.5 PackageSurfaceArea.PackageIncludes

This section is used to list include paths and header files that are a subset of other header files specified for either GUIDs, Protocols and/or PPIs or for supporting a given module type.

The following is the description of the `PackageSurfaceArea.PackageIncludes` instance:

```

<PackageIncludes>
  <PackageHeader>
    <HeaderFile
      SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
      SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1} >
      xs:anyURI
    </HeaderFile> {1}
    <HelpText
      Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:string
    </HelpText> {0,}
  </PackageHeader> {1,}
</PackageIncludes>

```

Table 60. PackageSurfaceArea.PackageIncludes

Description	Specifies the package relative include path or a package relative filename of an include file that extends the set of definitions available for the standard module types.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.5.1 PackageIncludes.PackageHeader

Table 61. PackageIncludes.PackageHeader

Description	Specifies the package relative include path or a package relative filename of an include file that extends the set of definitions available for the standard module types.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	Do not list: headers that are local to a module (module specific,) industry standard headers or a library class header in this section.
Examples	N/A

5.5.2 PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HeaderFile

Table 62. PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HeaderFile

Description	Specifies the package relative include path or a package relative filename of an include file that extends the set of definitions available for the standard module types.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:anyURI
Data Constraints	A PackagePath relative Path or a PackagePath relative Path and Filename (as located in the Distribution Content File.)

Distribution Packaging Specification

Examples	<pre><HeaderFile>Include</HeaderFile> <HeaderFile>Include/Peim.h</HeaderFile> <HeaderFile> Include/EdkDxeCore.h </HeaderFile></pre>
----------	---

5.5.3 PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HeaderFile:SupArchList

Table 63. PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HeaderFile:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this header. If this attribute is not specified, then this header may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use header.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

5.5.4 PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HeaderFile:SupModList

Table 64. PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HeaderFile:SupModList

Description	Used to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this header. If this attribute is not specified, then this header may be used with all module types. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that have a module type that is a member of the set of module types specified by this element may use this header.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	A string that contains a list of one or more module types. Module types are restricted to one of BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED, SMM_CORE.
Examples	SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEI_CORE PEIM" ModuleType="DXE_CORE UEFI_DRIVER DXE_DRIVER"

5.5.5 PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HelpText

Table 65. PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HelpText

Description	A paragraph describing this header file, including usage models and restrictions.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.

Examples	<code><HelpText USC2="false" Lang="en-us"> This file contains the latest ACPI definitions that are consumed by drivers that do not care about ACPI versions.</HelpText></code>
----------	--

5.5.6 PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HelpText:Lang

Table 66. PackageIncludes.PackageHeader.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	<code>Lang="en-us"</code>

5.6 PackageSurfaceArea.Modules

This section is used to reference individual modules that are part of a package.

The following is the description of the `PackageSurfaceArea.Modules` instance:

```
<Modules>
  <ModuleSurfaceArea> ... </ModuleSurfaceArea> {1,}
</Modules>
```

Table 67. PackageSurfaceArea.Modules

Description	This is section may be used to include a list of modules that are part of this package. An module listed here must have a corresponding ModuleSurfaceArea section completed.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.6.1 Modules.ModuleSurfaceArea

Refer to chapter 6, Module Surface Area Description. Modules that are part of a package should be listed here. Stand-alone modules that are not part of any package should be listed under the top level ModuleSurfaceArea section of the DistributionPackage.

5.7 PackageSurfaceArea.GuidDeclarations

This section defines all non-Protocol and non-Ppi C names and GUID values declared by a package. It is only specified in the package that declares the GUID in the design document.

The following is the description of the `PackageSurfaceArea.GuidDeclarations` instance:

```

<GuidDeclarations>
  <Entry
    UiName=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1}
    GuidTypes=" GuidListType " {0,1}
    SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
    SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1} >
    <CName> xs:NCName </CName> {1}
    <GuidValue> RegistryFormatGuid </GuidValue> {1}
    <HelpText
      Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:string
    </HelpText> {0,}
  </Entry> {1,}
</GuidDeclarations>

```

Table 68. PackageSurfaceArea.GuidDeclarations

Description	Specifies the list of GUIDs produced by this Package
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.7.1 GuidDeclarations.Entry

Table 69. GuidDeclarations.Entry

Description	Specifies the individual GUID information for a GUID that is declared by a specification for this Package
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.7.2 GuidDeclarations.Entry:UiName

Table 70. GuidDeclarations.Entry:UiName

Description	A user interface name for this GUID entry.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	A string that start with a letter or an underscore and is followed by any combination of letters, digits, periods, hyphens, and underscores. No whitespace is allowed.
Examples	UiName="CustomDecompress"

5.7.3 GuidDeclarations.Entry:GuidTypes

Table 71. GuidDeclarations.Entry:GuidTypes

Description	Used to restrict the set of GUID types that apply to this GUID. If this attribute is not specified, then this GUID may be used with all GUID types. If this attribute is specified, then this GUID may only appear in the sections of the module's information (build implementation specific) file that have a matching GUID type.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – GuidListType
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more GUID types separated by spaces. The GUID types are restricted to Event , File , FV , HII , HOB , SystemTable , TokenSpaceGuid , Variable or GUID (default.)
Examples	GuidTypes="TokenSpaceGuid" GuidTypes="SystemTable" GuidTypes="HOB SystemTable"

5.7.4 GuidDeclarations.Entry:SupArchList

Table 72. GuidDeclarations.Entry:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this GUID. If this attribute is not specified, then this GUID may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this GUID.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]* (" "[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

5.7.5 GuidDeclarations.Entry:SupModList

Table 73. GuidDeclarations.Entry:SupModList

Description	Used to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this GUID. If this attribute is not specified, then this GUID may be used with all module types. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that have a module type that is a member of the set of module types specified by this element may use this GUID.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED, SMM_CORE.
Examples	SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"

5.7.6 GuidDeclarations.Entry.CName

Table 74. GuidDeclarations.Entry.CName

Description	Specifies the symbol name for a GUID used in C code.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	A valid C variable name string that starts with either an underscore or a letter, followed by any number of letters, digits or underscores.
Examples	<CName>Acpi10Table</CName> <CName>PcAnsi</CName> <CName>DxeServicesTable</CName>

5.7.7 GuidDeclarations.Entry.GuidValue

Table 75. GuidDeclarations.Entry.GuidValue

Description	Specifies the registry format value of the GUID.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	A registry format GUID.

Examples	<pre><GuidValue> 8BE4DF61-93CA-11D2-AA0D-00E098032B8C </ GuidValue> <GuidValue>DFA66065-B419-11D3-9A2D-0090273FC14D</ GuidValue></pre>
----------	--

5.7.8 GuidDeclarations.Entry.HelpText

Table 76. GuidDeclarations.Entry.HelpText

Description	A complete description of a GUID. This must include any defines and data structures associated with this GUID. It must also describe any use restrictions based on GUID Type, Module Type, CPU Architecture, and/or Feature Flags.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<pre><HelpText Lang="en-us">The Console In Device GUID is used to tag an EFI_HANDLE for a Console Input Device as an active console input device. This is used by the Console Splitter Driver to search for set of console input devices in the handle database that should be multiplexed. This GUID is available to all CPU types, but is restricted for use by DXE_DRIVER, UEFI_DRIVER, and UEFI_APPLICATION module types.</HelpText></pre>

5.7.9 GuidDeclarations.Entry.HelpText:Lang

Table 77. GuidDeclarations.Entry.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	<pre>Lang="en-us"</pre>

5.8 PackageSurfaceArea.ProtocolDeclarations

This section defines all Protocol and ProtocolNotify C names and the GUID values declared by a package. It is only specified in the package that declares the Protocol in the design document.

The following is the description of the **PackageSurfaceArea.ProtocolDeclarations** instance:

```

<ProtocolDeclarations>
  <Entry
    UiName=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1}
    SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
    SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1} >
    <CName> xs:NCName </CName> {1}
    <GuidValue> RegistryFormatGuid </GuidValue> {1}
    <HelpText
      Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:string
    </HelpText> {0,}
  </Entry> {1,}
</ProtocolDeclarations>

```

Table 78. PackageSurfaceArea.ProtocolDeclarations

Description	Specifies the list of protocols that are produced by this package.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.8.1 ProtocolDeclaration.Entry

Table 79. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry

Description	Specifies the individual Protocol information about the protocol that must be produced by this package.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.8.2 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry:UiName

Table 80. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry:UiName

Description	A user interface name for this Protocol entry.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	A string that start with a letter or an underscore and is followed by any combination of letters, digits, periods, hyphens, and underscores. No whitespace is allowed.
Examples	UiName="IsaAcpi" UiName="PciHotPlugRequest"

5.8.3 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry:SupArchList

Table 81. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this Protocol. If this attribute is not specified, then this Protocol may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this Protocol.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

5.8.4 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry:SupModList

Table 82. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry:SupModList

Description	Used to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this Protocol. If this attribute is not specified, then this Protocol may be used with all module types. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that have a module type that is a member of the set of module types specified by this element may use this Protocol.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED, SMM_CORE.
Examples	SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"

5.8.5 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.CName

Table 83. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.CName

Description	Specifies the symbol name for a Protocol GUID used in C code.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName

Data Constraints	A string that starts with either an underscore or a letter, followed by any number of letters, digits or underscores.
Examples	<pre><CName>gEfiBlockIoProtocolGuid</CName> <CName> gEfiDiskIoProtocolGuid </CName></pre>

5.8.6 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.GuidValue

Table 84. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.GuidValue

Description	Specifies the GUID value for a Protocol.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	The Registry Format GUID Value
Examples	<code><GuidValue> AF0DDA2E-EA83-480b-B2CE-FC0BB2F894C2 </GuidValue></code>

5.8.7 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.HelpText

Table 85. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.HelpText

Description	A complete description of a Protocol. This must include any functions, defines, and data structures associated with this Protocol. It must also describe any use restrictions based on Module Type, CPU Architecture, and/or Feature Flags.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><HelpText>The Block I/O Protocol provides services to read, write, and flush block to a block oriented storage device such as a hard disk, CD-ROM, DVD, and floppy. This Protocol is available to all CPU types, but is restricted for use by DXE_DRIVER, UEFI_DRIVER, and UEFI_APPLICATION module types.</HelpText></code>

5.8.8 ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.HelpText:Lang

Table 86. ProtocolDeclarations.Entry.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	<code>Lang="en-us"</code>

5.9 PackageSurfaceArea.PpiDeclarations

This section defines all Ppi and PpiNotify C names and the GUID values declared by a package. It is

only specified in the package that declares the Ppi in the design document.

The following is the description of the **PackageSurfaceArea.PpiDeclarations** instance:

```

<PpiDeclarations>
  <Entry
    UiName=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1}
    SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
    SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1} >
    <CName> xs:NCName </CName> {1}
    <GuidValue> RegistryFormatGuid </GuidValue> {1}
    <HelpText
      Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:string
    </HelpText> {0,}
  </Entry> {1,}
</PpiDeclarations>

```

Table 87. PackageSurfaceArea.PpiDeclarations

Description	Specifies a list of PPIs that are produced by this Package.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.9.1 PpiDeclarations.Entry

Table 88. PpiDeclarations.Entry

Description	Specifies a single PPI that are produced by this Package.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.9.2 PpiDeclarations.Entry:UiName

Table 89. PpiDeclarations.Entry:UiName

Description	A user interface name for this PPI entry.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	A string that start with a letter or an underscore and is followed by any combination of letters, digits, periods, hyphens, and underscores. No whitespace is allowed.
Examples	UiName="BaseMemoryTest" UiName="OperatorPresence"

5.9.3 PpiDeclarations.Entry:SupArchList

Table 90. PpiDeclarations.Entry:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this PPI. If this attribute is not specified, then this PPI may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this PPI.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]*) *
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

5.9.4 PpiDeclarations.Entry:SupModList

Table 91. PpiDeclarations.Entry:SupModList

Description	Used to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this PPI. If this attribute is not specified, then this PPI may be used with all module types. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that have a module type that is a member of the set of module types specified by this element may use this PPI.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, TOOL, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED, SMM_CORE.
Examples	SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"

5.9.5 PpiDeclarations.Entry.CName

Table 92. PpiDeclarations.Entry.CName

Description	Specifies the symbol name for a PPI GUID used in C code.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName

Distribution Packaging Specification

Data Constraints	A string that starts with either an underscore or a letter, followed by any number of letters, digits or underscores.
Examples	<code><CName>gEfiDxeiIplPpiGuid</CName></code> <code><CName> gEfiPciCfgPpiGuid </CName></code>

5.9.6 PpiDeclarations.Entry.GuidValue

Table 93. PpiDeclarations.Entry.GuidValue

Description	Specifies the GUID value for a PPI.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	The Registry Format GUID value.
Examples	<code><GuidValue> AF0DDA2E-EA83-480b-B2CE-FC0BB2F894C2 </GuidValue></code>

5.9.7 PpiDeclarations.Entry.HelpText

Table 94. PpiDeclarations.Entry.HelpText

Description	A complete description of a PPI. This must include any functions, defines, and data structures associated with this PPI. It must also describe any use restrictions based on Module Type, CPU Architecture, and/or Feature Flags.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><HelpText>The PCI CFG PPI provides services to access PCI Configuration Headers from a PEIM. This PPI is available to all CPU types, but is restricted for use by PEIM module types.</HelpText></code>

5.9.8 PpiDeclarations.Entry.HelpText:Lang

Table 95. PpiDeclarations.Entry.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	<code>Lang="en-us"</code>

5.10 PackageSurfaceArea.PcdDeclarations

The following is the description of the `PackageSurfaceArea.PcdDeclarations` instance:

```

<PcdDeclarations>
  <PcdEntry
    SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
    SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1} >
    <TokenSpaceGuidCname> xs:NCName </TokenSpaceGuidCname> {1}
    <Token> HexNumber </Token> {1}
    <CName> xs:NCName </CName> {1}
    <DatumType> PcdDatumTypes </DatumType> {1}
    <ValidUsage> PcdItemListType </ValidUsage> {1}
    <DefaultValue> xs:normalizedString </DefaultValue> {1}
    <MaxDatumSize> HexNumber </MaxDatumSize> {0,1}
    <Prompt
      Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:normalizedString
    </Prompt> {0,}
    <HelpText
      Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:string
    </HelpText> {0,}
    <PcdError> ... </PcdError> {0,}
  </PcdEntry> {1,}
</PcdDeclarations>

```

Table 96. PackageSurfaceArea.PcdDeclarations

Description	Specifies a list of Pcd entries that are defined by this Package. One and Only One package can specify these entries.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.10.1 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry

Table 97. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry

Description	Specifies a single of Pcd entry that are defined by this Package. One and Only One package can specify this entry.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.10.2 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry:SupArchList

Table 98. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this PCD Entry. If this attribute is not specified, then this PCD Entry may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this PCD Entry.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

5.10.3 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry:SupModList

Table 99. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry:SupModList

Description	Used to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this PCD Entry. If this attribute is not specified, then this PCD Entry may be used with all module types. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that have a module type that is a member of the set of module types specified by this element may use this PCD Entry.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED, SMM_CORE.
Examples	SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"

5.10.4 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.TokenSpaceGuidCname

Table 100. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.TokenSpaceGuidCname

Description	Specifies the C name of the Token Space GUID of which this PCD Entry is a member. This C name should also be listed in the GUIDs section (specified above) where the C name is assigned to a GUID value in C data structure format.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName

Distribution Packaging Specification

Data Constraints	A string that starts with either an underscore or a letter, followed by any number of letters, digits or underscores.
Examples	<code><TokenSpaceGuidCName> gPcdBaseAddress</TokenSpaceGuidCName></code>

5.10.5 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.Token

Table 101. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.Token

Description	Specified the 32-bit token value for the PCD Entry
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – HexNumber
Data Constraints	Each PCD Entry in a Token Space must have a unique Token value. This element must contain one to eight hexadecimal characters.
Examples	<code><Token>0x00010001</Token></code> <code><Token>0xA</Token></code>

5.10.6 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.CName

Table 102. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.CName

Description	Specifies the symbol name for a PCD Entry used in C code. This element is also used by the UI Tools to display the name of the PCD Entry.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	A string that starts with either an underscore or a letter, followed by any number of letters, digits or underscores.
Examples	<code><CName> PcdDebugPropertyMask </CName></code>

5.10.7 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.DatumType

Table 103. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.DatumType

Description	Specifies the datum type of this PCD Entry.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – PcdDataType
Data Constraints	A string that contains the data type of the PCD Entry. PCD data types are restricted to the following set: UINT8 , UINT16 , UINT32 , UINT64 , VOID* , BOOLEAN .
Examples	<code><DatumType> UINT8 </DatumType></code> <code><DatumType> VOID* </DatumType></code> <code><DatumType> BOOLEAN </DatumType></code>

5.10.8 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.ValidUsage

Table 104. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.ValidUsage

Description	Specifies the set of valid usages for this PCD Entry.
Required	YES

Data Type	Element – PcdItemListType
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more PCD Entry item types separated by spaces. The PCD Entry item types are restricted to FeaturePcd , FixedPcd , PatchPcd , Pcd and/or PcdEx .
Examples	<pre><ValidUsage> FeaturePcd </ValidUsage> <ValidUsage> FixedPcd PatchPcd</ValidUsage> <ValidUsage> FixedPcd PatchPcd Pcd PcdEx </ValidUsage></pre>

Pcd Item Types

FeaturePcd

This is a boolean PCD, which can cause different execution paths within a module, as well as to include or exclude different elements of a module during a build.

FixedPcd

This specifies that the value for this PCD is fixed at build time, and that it can only be modified at build time.

PatchPcd

This specifies that the value for this PCD is set during the build, but that binary information about this PCD must be provided, so that the value can be changed prior to adding it to a firmware volume, modified within a firmware volume or modified within a final flash image prior to installing the image into a firmware device.

Pcd

This usage is overloaded, with two different meanings. Prior to a build, the platform integrator can select whether the PCD will be fixed at build time, patchable, or truly dynamic. A truly dynamic instance requires the addition of a PEI and/or DXE pcd driver within a platform to maintain a volatile database of values that can set or retrieved. The data store for these entries is platform specific.

PcdEx

This specifies that the PCD is always a truly dynamic instance. Truly dynamic PCD entries require the addition of a PEI and/or DXE pcd driver within a platform to maintain a volatile database of values that can set or retrieved. The data store for these entries is platform specific.

5.10.9 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.DefaultValue

Table 105. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.DefaultValue

Description	Specifies the default value for the PCD Entry. This default value is only used to initialize the contents of a platform description or flash definition file when a module is added to a platform.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	This element must support strings used to encode all the supported datum types, which includes 8, 16, 32, and 64 bit unsigned integers, Booleans, and buffers. The buffer types supported are ASCII strings, C format strings, and arrays of byte values.
Examples	<pre><DefaultValue>0x1f</DefaultValue> <DefaultValue>0x80000000</DefaultValue> <DefaultValue>234</DefaultValue> <DefaultValue>PlatformName</DefaultValue> <DefaultValue>L"PlatformName"</DefaultValue> <DefaultValue>0x01 0x02 0x03 0x45</DefaultValue></pre>

5.10.10 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.MaxDatumSize

Table 106. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.MaxDatumSize

Description	Specifies the Maximum Data Size for the PCD Entry. This value is used for VOID* DatumType, and should be the Maximum length required for the PCD's typical usage. Platform description files may over-ride this value – if and only if they specify a larger data size.
Required	YES – Only for VOID* DatumType PCDs
Data Type	Element – HexNumber
Data Constraints	This element is used for data structures to eliminate buffer-overruns.
Examples	<pre><MaxDatumSize>0x1f</MaxDatumSize> <MaxDatumSize> 0x20000 </MaxDatumSize></pre>

5.10.10.1 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.Prompt

Table 107. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.Prompt

Description	A string that can be used to map a VFR question to a PCD
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	
Examples	<Prompt> Enter the maximum number of vertical lines of the Display</Prompt>

5.10.10.2 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.Prompt:Lang

PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.Prompt:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang=”en-us” Lang=”fra”

5.10.11 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.HelpText

Table 108. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.HelpText

Description	A complete description of a PCD Entry including the intended use models of the PCD Entry, its valid usage, its data type, and any value assignment constraints. It must also describe any use restrictions based on Module Type, CPU Architecture, and/or Feature Flags.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<pre> <HelpText> The PcdDebugPropertyMask is an 8-bit mask of debug properties that may be set to a unique value for each module in the platform. This PCD Entry is available to all CPU and Module types and may be configured as FIXED_AT_BUILD or BINARY_PATCHABLE and supports the following bit settings: #define DEBUG_PROPERTY_DEBUG_ASSERT_ENABLED 0x01 #define DEBUG_PROPERTY_DEBUG_PRINT_ENABLED 0x02 #define DEBUG_PROPERTY_DEBUG_CODE_ENABLED 0x04 #define DEBUG_PROPERTY_CLEAR_MEMORY_ENABLED 0x08 </HelpText> </pre>

5.10.12 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.HelpText:Lang

Table 109. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.HelpText.Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

5.10.13 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError

```

<PcdError>
  Choice (One and only one of the following must be selected)
    <ValidValueList
      Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
        xs:normalizedString
    </ValidValueList>
    <ValidValueRange> xs:normalizedString </ValidValueRange>
    <Expression> xs:normalizedString </Expression>
  End Choice
  <ErrorNumber> HexNumber </ErrorNumber> {1}
  <ErrorMessage
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:string
  </ErrorMessage> {1,}
</PcdError>

```

Table 110. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError

Description	Valid Error messages implemented in this module for the PCD Entry. Only One Error Number per PcdError, (multiple ErrorMessage entries are permitted) and multiple PcdError elements are permitted.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.10.14 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ValidValueList

Table 111. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ValidValueList

Description	A list of valid values
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString

Distribution Packaging Specification

Data Constraints	Space Separated list of values. Restricted to the data type of this PCD. Use of the L"string" is permitted to specify a UTF-8 text string that will be converted to UNICODE (UCS2) format in the code. Words that are not quoted are considered to be enumerations.
Examples	<pre><ValidValueList> 0xb0000000 0xb0000001 </ ValidValueList> <ValidValueList> "Blue" "Red" "White" </ ValidValueList> <ValidValueList> orange peach apple pear </ ValidValueList></pre>

5.10.15 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ValidValueList:Lang

Table 112. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ValidValueList:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

5.10.16 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ValidValueRange

Table 113. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ValidValueRange

Description	The valid range of values using C style nomenclature.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	This is required to be an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. All other values must be numeric.
Examples	<ValidValueRange> (0xb0000000 LE PcdCNameGoesHere) AND (PcdCNameGoesHere GT 0x00010000) </ ValidValueRange> <ValidValueRange> PcdCNameGoesHere LT 0x10001FFF AND (PcdCNameGoesHere NOT EQ 0x8000000) </ ValidValueRange>

5.10.17 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.Expression

Table 114. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.Expression

Description	An in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, AND, OR, GT, GE, EQ, LE, LT and XOR) and parenthesis are recommended. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName.
Required	NO

Distribution Packaging Specification

Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	The expression must evaluate to true or false.
Examples	<Expression> (NOT gPcdRecoveryMode) AND gPcdS3Resume </Expression>

5.10.18 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ErrorNumber

Table 115. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ErrorNumber

Description	A 32-bit token value for the PCD Error Number that is unique to the token space GUID C name of the PCD declared by this package. The Error Number can be used as an index of messages provided for a token space defined by the token space GUID C name.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – HexNumber
Data Constraints	Each PCD Error Number in a Token Space must have a unique Error Number value. This element must contain one to eight hexadecimal characters.
Examples	<code><ErrorNumber>0xb0000000</ErrorNumber></code> <code><ErrorNumber>0xb0000001</ErrorNumber></code>

5.10.19 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ErrorMessage

Table 116. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ErrorMessage

Description	An error message for conditional failures of the choices above.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><ErrorMessage> The value specified exceeds the maximum value allowed. </ErrorMessage></code>

5.10.20 PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ErrorMessage:Lang

Table 117. PcdDeclarations.PcdEntry.PcdError.ErrorMessage:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	<code>Lang="en-us"</code> <code>Lang="fra"</code>

5.11 PackageSurfaceArea.PcdRelationshipChecks

The following is the description of the `PackageSurfaceArea.RelationshipChecks` instance:

```
<PcdRelationshipChecks>
  <PcdCheck> xs:normalizedString </PcdCheck> {1,}
</PcdRelationshipChecks>
```

Table 118. PackageSurfaceArea.PcdRelationshipChecks

Description	This element is used to list any dependency or relationship expressions for PCDs at a global level.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

5.11.1 PcdRelationshipChecks.PcdCheck

Table 119. PcdRelationshipChecks.PcdCheck

Description	If one or more of this package's PCD settings may be dependent on a different PCD or have a specific relationship, then the relationship can be specified here. Each PCD is named by TokenSpaceGuidCname.PcdCname.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizeString
Data Constraints	An in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, PCDs that are interdependent or have a limiting relationship, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. Only the C name for this PCD is permitted in the ValidValueRange expression. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. All other values must be numeric.
Examples	<pre><PcdCheck> gIoSerialTokenSpace.myComPort1Int XOR gIoSerialTokenSpace.myComPort2Int </PcdCheck> <PcdCheck> gIoTokenSpace.mPciBaseAddress LT gVideoTokenSpace.mNoSuchVideoDriverBaseAddress </ PcdCheck></pre>

5.12 PackageSurfaceArea.MiscellaneousFiles

The following is the description of the **PackageSurfaceArea.MiscellaneousFiles** instance:

```

<MiscellaneousFiles>
  <Copyright> xs:string </Copyright> {0,1}
  <License> xs:string </License> {0,1}
  <Abstract> xs:string </Abstract> {0,1}
  <Description> xs:string </Description> {0,}
  <Filename
    Executable=" xs:boolean " {0,1} >
    xs:anyURI
  </Filename> {1,}
</MiscellaneousFiles>

```

Table 120. PackageSurfaceArea.MiscellaneousFiles

Description	This element contains any miscellaneous files that are not part of code distributed with this package.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	Free-form text or any well formed XML element(s.)
Examples	N/A

5.12.1 MiscellaneousFiles.Copyright

Table 121. MiscellaneousFiles.Copyright

Description	The copyright for this section if it is different than the copyright specified in the package header. The copyright is generated by the creator of the tool. If a derivative work is generated from an existing section, then the existing copyright must be maintained, and additional copyrights may be appended to the end of this element.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A set of one or more copyright statements on one or more lines of text.
Examples	<Copyright> Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights reserved. </Copyright>

5.12.2 MiscellaneousFiles.License

Table 122. MiscellaneousFiles.License

Description	A license that describes any restrictions on the use of this tool if it is different than the license specified in the package header. If a derivative work is allowed by the original license and a derivative work is generated from an existing package, then the existing license must be maintained, and additional licenses may be appended to the end of this element.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string

Distribution Packaging Specification

Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<pre><License> This program and the accompanying materials are licensed and made available under the terms and conditions of the BSD License which accompanies this distribution. The full text of the license may be found at http://opensource.org/licenses/bsd-license.php THE PROGRAM IS DISTRIBUTED UNDER THE BSD LICENSE ON AN 'AS IS' BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. </License></pre>

5.12.3 MiscellaneousFiles.Abstract

Table 123. MiscellaneousFiles.Abstract

Description	A one line description of the content in this section.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	String value of one or more characters.
Examples	<Abstract>Special Build Rules 1 for processing file type foo</Abstract>

5.12.4 MiscellaneousFiles.Description

Table 124. MiscellaneousFiles.Description

Description	Any additional detailed information that might be appropriate for content in this section.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<Description> Detailed instructions for using this package. </Description>

5.12.5 MiscellaneousFiles.Filename

Table 125. MiscellaneousFiles.Filename

Description	A file that is included in the distribution package that does not pertain to any of the previously defined sections.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:anyURI
Data Constraints	The PackagePath relative path and filename of the file in the Distribution Content File.
Examples	<File>FooBarMfgBuild/ReadMe.txt</File> <File> FooBarSpecification.pdf </File>

5.12.6 MiscellaneousFiles.Filename:Executable

Table 126. MiscellaneousFiles.Filename:Executable

Description	This flag is used during installation to ensure that the file is executable.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:boolean

Data Constraints	<code>"true"</code> or <code>"false"</code> (default)
Examples	<code>Executable="true"</code>

5.13 PackageSurfaceArea.UserExtensions

The following is the description of the `PackageSurfaceArea.UserExtensions` instance:

```

<UserExtensions
  UserId=" xs:NCName " {1}
  Identifier=" xs:string " {1}
  AnyAttribute {0,} >
  Any Text or XML Format
</UserExtensions>

```

Table 127. PackageSurfaceArea.UserExtensions

Description	This section is used for any processing instructions that may be custom to the content provided by the distribution that are common to package. Processing of this section is specified as “lax”.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	None
Examples	N/A

5.13.1 UserExtensions:UserId

Table 128. UserExtensions:UserId

Description	The normative reference name to identify the originator of this information.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	A string that starts with a letter followed by any combination of letters, digits, underscores, and periods. No whitespace characters are allowed.
Examples	UserId="NoSuchCorp"

5.13.2 UserExtensions:Identifier

Table 129. UserExtensions:Identifier

Description	This can be used to differentiate multiple sections with a grouping.
Required	Yes
Data Type	Attribute– xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that starts with a number or letter followed by any combination of letters, digits, underscores, dashes and periods. Whitespace characters are allowed.
Examples	Identifier="Special Build Rules 1" Identifier="f6665cf5-8290-4b02-ba0c-5cb5a9542176" Identifier="PRE_BUILD"

Module Surface Area Description

A distribution surface area may contain zero or more Module Surface Area sections. Within the Module Surface Area only the attributes and the Header section are required. The remaining sections are optional.

The XML Instance Representation for **DistributionPackage.ModuleSurfaceArea** is as follows:

```

<ModuleSurfaceArea
  BinaryModule=" xs:boolean " {0,1} >
  <Header> ... </Header> {1}
  <ModuleProperties> ... </ModuleProperties> {0,1}
  <ClonedFrom> ... </ClonedFrom> {0,1}
  <LibraryClassDefinitions> ... </LibraryClassDefinitions>
{0,1}
  <SourceFiles> ... </SourceFiles> {0,1}
  <BinaryFiles> ... </BinaryFiles> {0,1}
  <PackageDependencies> ... </PackageDependencies> {0,1}
  <Guids> ... </Guids> {0,1}
  <Protocols> ... </Protocols> {0,1}
  <PPIs> ... </PPIs> {0,1}
  <Externs> ... </Externs> {0,1}
  <PcdCoded> ... </PcdCoded> {0,1}
  <PeiDepex> ... </PeiDepex> {0,}
  <DxeDepex> ... </DxeDepex> {0,}
  <SmmDepex> ... </SmmDepex> {0,}
  <MiscellaneousFiles> ... </MiscellaneousFiles> {0,1}
  <UserExtensions> ... </UserExtensions> {0,}
</ModuleSurfaceArea>

```

Table 130. ModuleSurfaceArea

Description	Specifies contents of a Module that is provided by this distribution package.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.1 ModuleSurfaceArea:BinaryModule

Table 131. ModuleSurfaceArea:BinaryModule

Description	This attribute is used when the binaries are distributed for this module and no code generation from source files is required. If set, then the binary section should be used, and any files listed in the SourceFiles section do not have to be built.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:boolean
Data Constraints	For binary only modules, this value should be set to “ true ”, Default (or non-specified) value is “ false ”.
Examples	BinaryModule="true"

6.2 ModuleSurfaceArea.Header

The following is the description of the `ModuleSurfaceArea.Header` instance:

```

<Header>
  <Name
    BaseName=" xs:Nmtoken " {1} >
    xs:normalizedString
  </Name> {1}
  <GUID
    Version=" xs:decimal " {1} >
    RegistryFormatGuid
  </GUID> {1}
  <Copyright> xs:string </Copyright> {0,1}
  <License> xs:string </License> {0,1}
  <Abstract
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:normalizedString </Abstract> {0,}
  <Description
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:string </Description> {0,}
</Header>

```

Table 132. ModuleSurfaceArea.Header

Description	This element contains the header information for Module Surface Area Description. This includes the name of the module, descriptions of the module, copyright and licensing information associated with the module, and the version of XML Schema to which this file conforms.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.2.1 Header.Name

Table 133. Header.Name

Description	The User Interface Name for the module. This name is only used by a user interface to display the name of the module.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	String value of one or more characters.
Examples	<Name> USB 1.0 I/O Driver </Name>

6.2.2 Header.Name:BaseName

Table 134. Header.Name:BaseName

Description	This is a single word BaseName that may be used to create output file names and directories.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – xs:Nmtoken
Data Constraints	It must be a word made up of one or more alphanumeric characters. Non-word characters: underscore "_", dash "-", and period "." are permitted after the first character.
Examples	BaseName="IntelIch7" BaseName="Foo_bar-1_ten"

6.2.3 Header.GUID

Table 135. Header.GUID

Description	The 128-bit registry format GUID that is the unique name of a module. The GUID must change if a change is made that is not backward compatible.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid

Data Constraints	A string that represents a GUID in registry format. If a module is backwards compatible with a previous release of the same module, then ModuleSurfaceArea.Header.GUID element must not be changed, and only the ModuleSurfaceArea.Header.GUID:Version element should be increased. If a module is not backward compatible with a previous release, then a new ModuleSurfaceArea.Header.GUID must be generated.
Examples	<GUID Version="0.3"> AF0DDA2E-EA83-480b-B2CE-FC0BB2F894C2 </GUID>

6.2.4 Header.GUID:Version

Table 136. Header.GUID:Version

Description	The version of this Module.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – xs:decimal
Data Constraints	A string that contains a positive decimal number with a dot separator.
Examples	Version="1.00" Version="1.02" Version="3.27"

6.2.5 Header.Copyright

Table 137. Header.Copyright

Description	This field is require only if the copyright of this module is different from the copyright of the container package that provides this module. The copyright for this module that is generated by the creator of a module. If a derivative work is generated from an existing module, then the existing copyright must be maintained, and additional copyrights may be appended to the end of this element.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A set of one or more copyright statements on one or more lines of text.
Examples	<Copyright> Copyright (c) 2006, Nosuch Corporation. All rights reserved. </Copyright>

6.2.6 Header.License

Table 138. Header.License

Description	This field is only required if the module license is different from the container package license. A license that describes any restrictions on the use of this module. If a derivative work is allowed by the original license and a derivative work is generated from an existing module, then the existing license must be maintained, and additional licenses may be appended to the end of this element. Alternative, this may point to a file which is located in the same directory a the module description file.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<pre> <License> This program and the accompanying materials are licensed and made available under the terms and conditions of the BSD License which accompanies this distribution. The full text of the license may be found at: http://opensource.org/licenses/bsd-license.php THE PROGRAM IS DISTRIBUTED UNDER THE BSD LICENSE ON AN AS IS BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. </License> <License> License.txt </License> </pre>

6.2.7 Header.Abstract

Table 139. Header.Abstract

Description	A one line description of the module.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	String value of one or more characters.
Examples	<pre><Abstract> USB I/O Driver Version 1.0 </Abstract></pre>

6.2.7.1 Header.Abstract:Lang

Table 140. Header.Abstract:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language

Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

6.2.8 Header.Description

Table 141. Header.Description

Description	A complete description of the module. This description must include the release name of the module, the version of the module, and a complete description of the module contents and/or features including a description of the updates since the previous module release.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<Description> USB I/O Driver Version 1.0 that conforms to the USB 2.2 specification. The module handles all USB I/O functions. </Description>

6.2.8.1 Header:Description:Lang

Table 142. Header:Description:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

6.3 ModuleSurfaceArea.ModuleProperties

The following is the description of the **ModuleSurfaceArea.ModuleProperties** instance:

```

<ModuleProperties
  SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
  SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1} >
    <ModuleType> ModuleTypes </ModuleType> {1}
    <Path> xs:anyURI </Path> {1}
    <PcdIsDriver> PcdDriverTypes </PcdIsDriver> {0,1}
    <UefiSpecificationVersion> xs:decimal </
UefiSpecificationVersion> {0,1}
    <PiSpecificationVersion> xs:decimal </
PiSpecificationVersion> {0,1}
    <Specification
      Version=" xs:decimal " >
        xs:NCName
    </Specification> {0,}
    <BootMode> ... </BootMode> {0,}
    <Event> ... </Event> {0,}
    <HOB> ... </HOB> {0,}
</ModuleProperties>

```

Table 143. ModuleSurfaceArea.ModuleProperties

Description	List general information about a module, including the Supported Architectures, the version of the UEFI and PI specs a module may conform to, and non-GUIDed information, such as boot modes a module might set, timer events, or hand off blocks.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.3.1 ModuleProperties:SupArchList

Table 144. ModuleProperties:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this module. If this attribute is not specified, then this module may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those platforms that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this module. The list of Architectures that this module was designed to support and that it has been tested on.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

6.3.2 ModuleProperties:SupModList

Table 145. ModuleProperties:SupModList

Description	Used by Libraries to restrict the set of modules that the code in this library supports.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED, SMM_CORE.
Examples	<pre>SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"</pre>

6.3.3 ModuleProperties.ModuleType

Table 146. ModuleProperties.ModuleType

Description	Define the Module type that this module is.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – ModuleType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one and only one of the supported module types. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED, SMM_CORE..
Examples	<pre><ModuleType> BASE </MODULE_TYPE> <ModuleType> PEIM </MODULE_TYPE> SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER"</pre>

6.3.4 ModuleProperties.Path

Table 147. ModuleProperties.Path

Description	For stand-alone modules that are NOT part of any package, this is the path to the root of the module as listed in the Distribution Content File. For modules included in a package, this is the location, relative to the root of the package this module belongs to.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:anyURI

Module Surface Area Description

Data Constraints	A valid (Distribution Content File or Package) relative path to the root of the Module.
Examples	<code><Path>Libraries/BaseLib</Path></code> <code><Path> EfiShellBin </Path></code> <code><Path>Universal/Disk/DiskIo/Dxe</Path></code>

6.3.5 ModuleProperties.PcdIsDriver

Table 148. ModuleProperties.PcdIsDriver

Description	This element is only required for the PEIM that produces the PCD PPI or the DXE Driver that produces the PCD Protocol.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	One of enumerated type: PEI_PCD_DRIVER or DXE_PCD_DRIVER
Examples	<PcdIsDriver>PEI_PCD_DRIVER</PcdIsDriver> <PcdIsDriver>DXE_PCD_DRIVER</PcdIsDriver>

6.3.6 ModuleProperties.UefiSpecificationVersion

Table 149. ModuleProperties.UefiSpecificationVersion

Description	The number should reflect the version of the UEFI specification that the module conforms to. This value should be provided.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:decimal
Data Constraints	A decimal value that must include the period character.
Examples	<UefiSpecificationVersion> 2.1 </UefiSpecificationVersion>

6.3.7 ModuleProperties.PiSpecificationVersion

Table 150. ModuleProperties.PiSpecificationVersion

Description	The number should reflect the version of the PI specification that the module conforms to. This may be left blank.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:decimal
Data Constraints	A decimal value that must include the period character.
Examples	<PiSpecificationVersion> 1.0 </PiSpecificationVersion>

6.3.8 ModuleProperties.Specification

Table 151. ModuleProperties.Specification

Description	One or more of these elements indicate that the module has been coded to conform to the specified Industry Standard Specifications.
Required	NO

Module Surface Area Description

Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	NA
Examples	<Specification Version="1.0"> NoSuch_MACHINE_DOT_COM </Specification>

6.3.9 ModuleProperties.Specification:Version

Table 152. ModuleProperties.Specification:Version

Description	The Industry Standard spec version of this Module. If a module is coded to support more than one version of a spec, such as support for USB 1.1 and USB 2.0 specifications, then two different Specification lines should be used.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – xs:decimal
Data Constraints	A decimal value that must include the period character.
Examples	Version="1.0" Version="1.1" Version="2.0"

6.3.10 ModuleProperties.BootMode

```

<BootMode>
  Usage=" one of the enumerated values " {1}
  SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
  FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1} >
    <SupportedBootModes> list of Boot Modes </SupportedBootModes>
  {1}
  <HelpText
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:string
  </HelpText> {0,}
</BootMode> {1,}

```

Table 153. ModuleProperties.BootMode

Description	This is a list of boot modes supported or set by this module.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.3.11 ModuleProperties.BootMode:Usage

Table 154. ModuleProperties.BootMode:Usage

Description	This element specifies the GUID Usage.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – UsageType

Data Constraints	<p>One of the enumerated values: CONSUMES, PRODUCES, SOMETIMES_CONSUMES or SOMETIMES_PRODUCES</p> <p>CONSUMES means that the module supports the boot mode or that it may support the boot mode on some execution paths.</p> <p>PRODUCES means that the module will change the boot mode</p> <p>UNDEFINED - Implies that a Boot Mode is used, but the package creator does not know how it used.</p>
Examples	<p>Usage="PRODUCES"</p> <p>Usage="CONSUMES"</p>

6.3.12 ModuleProperties.BootMode:SupArchList

Table 155. ModuleProperties.BootMode:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this Boot Mode. If this attribute is not specified, then this Boot Mode may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this BootMode.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]*) *
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

6.3.13 ModuleProperties.BootMode:FeatureFlag

Table 156. ModuleProperties.BootMode:FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this Boot Mode. An in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this Boot Mode may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true .
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE , GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="true"

6.3.14 ModuleProperties.BootMode.SupportedBootModes

Table 157. ModuleProperties.BootMode.SupportedBootMode

Description	Firmware execution paths are divided into two main categories, a normal boot and a recovery boot (in the case of potential corruption.) Within these two paths, different paths can be taken based on a given state of the firmware, or through feature settings. A BootMode GUID can be installed (PRODUCES) or located (CONSUMES) based on these states and feature settings. The majority of these types map to the PI specification Boot Mode Services. The boot modes listed with Recovery are to indicate that the GUID is only valid during a recovery boot.
Required	YES

Data Type	Element – BootModeList
Data Constraints	<p>One or more (space separated) of the enumerated data types: FULL, MINIMAL, NO_CHANGE, DIAGNOSTICS, DEFAULT, S2_RESUME, S3_RESUME, S4_RESUME, S5_RESUME, FLASH_UPDATE, RECOVERY_FULL, RECOVERY_MINIMAL, RECOVERY_NO_CHANGE, RECOVERY_DIAGNOSTICS, RECOVERY_DEFAULT, RECOVERY_S2_RESUME, RECOVERY_S3_RESUME, RECOVERY_S4_RESUME, RECOVERY_S5_RESUME, RECOVERY_FLASH_UPDATE</p> <p>UNDEFINED - implies that the package creator does not know which of the boot modes are used.</p>
Examples	<pre><SupportedBootModes> FULL RECOVERY_FULL </SupportedBootModes></pre>

6.3.15 ModuleProperties.BootMode.HelpText

Table 158. ModuleProperties.BootMode.HelpText

Description	This element specifies the HelpText describing how the module either sets or supports specific boot modes.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><HelpText> Initializes the Dxe Ipl PPI for all boot modes except S3 Resume.</HelpText></code>

6.3.16 ModuleProperties.BootMode.HelpText:Lang

Table 159. ModuleProperties.BootMode.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	<code>Lang="en-us"</code>

6.3.17 ModuleProperties.Event

```

<Event
  Usage=" UsageType " {1}
  EventType=" EventType " {1}
  SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
  FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1} >
  <HelpText
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:string
  </HelpText> {0,}
</Event>

```

Table 160. ModuleSurfaceArea.ModuleProperties.Event

Description	This is a list of non-GUIDed Events produced or consumed by this module.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex, nillable="true"
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.3.18 ModuleProperties.Event:Usage

Table 161. ModuleProperties.Event:Usage

Description	This element specifies the non-GUIDed Event Usage.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – UsageType
Data Constraints	One of the enumerated values: CONSUMES , PRODUCES , SOMETIMES_CONSUMES or SOMETIMES_PRODUCES PRODUCES means that a module will produce a GUID that does not fit into the defined PROTOCOL, PPI or other GUID types. CONSUMES means that a module may use this GUID that does not fit into the defined GUID types. UNDEFINED - implies that an Event is used, but the package creator does not know how it used.
Examples	Usage="PRODUCES" Usage="CONSUMES"

6.3.19 ModuleProperties.Event:EventType

Table 162. ModuleProperties.Event:EventType

Description	This element specifies the type of Event.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – UsageType
Data Constraints	One of the enumerated values: EVENT_TYPE_PERIODIC_TIMER or EVENT_TYPE_RELATIVE_TIMER UNDEFINED - implies that an event is used, but the package creator does not know the Event Type.
Examples	EventType="EVENT_TYPE_RELATIVE_TIMER"

6.3.20 ModuleProperties.Event:SupArchList

Table 163. ModuleProperties.Event:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this GUID. If this attribute is not specified, then this GUID may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this GUID.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported CPU architectures separated by spaces. The supported CPU architectures include IA32 , X64 , IPF , ARM and EBC

Distribution Packaging Specification

Examples	<code>SupArchList="IA32"</code> <code>SupArchList="IA32 X64"</code> <code>SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"</code>
-----------------	--

6.3.21 ModuleProperties.Event:FeatureFlag

Table 164. ModuleProperties.Event:FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this GUID. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. It may be an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this GUID may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true .
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="true"

6.3.22 ModuleProperties.Event.HelpText

Table 165. ModuleProperties.Event.HelpText

Description	This element specifies the HelpText describing how the module sets or waits for a timer event.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<HelpText> If Password is NULL unlock the password state variable and set the event timer. If the Password is too big return an error. If the Password is valid, copy the Password and enable state variable and then arm the periodic timer. </HelpText>

6.3.23 ModuleProperties.Event.HelpText:Lang

Table 166. ModuleProperties.Event.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language

Distribution Packaging Specification

Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	Lang="en-us"

6.3.24 ModuleProperties.HOB

```

<HOB
  Usage=" UsageType " {1}
  HobType=" HobType " {1}
  SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
  FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1} >
  <HelpText
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:string
  </HelpText> {0,}
</HOB>

```

Table 167. ModuleSurfaceArea.ModuleProperties.HOB

Description	This is a list of non-GUIDed HOBs produced or consumed by this module.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex, nillable="true"
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.3.25 ModuleProperties.HOB:Usage

Table 168. ModuleProperties.HOB:Usage

Description	This element specifies the HOB Usage.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – UsageType
Data Constraints	<p>One of the enumerated values: CONSUMES, PRODUCES, SOMETIMES_CONSUMES or SOMETIMES_PRODUCES</p> <p>PRODUCES means that a module will produce a HOB that does not fit into the defined PROTOCOL, PPI or other GUID types.</p> <p>CONSUMES means that a module may use this HOB that does not fit into the defined GUID types.</p> <p>UNDEFINED - implies that a HOB is used, but the package creator does not know how it used.</p> <p>UNDEFINED - implies that a HOB is used, but the package creator does not know how it is used.</p>
Examples	<p>Usage="PRODUCES"</p> <p>Usage="CONSUMES"</p>

6.3.26 ModuleProperties.HOB:HobType

Table 169. ModuleProperties.HOB:HobType

Description	This element specifies the type of HOB.
-------------	---

Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – Enumerated list value
Data Constraints	One of the enumerated values: PHIT , MEMORY_ALLOCATION , RESOURCE_DESCRIPTOR , FIRMWARE_VOLUME or LOAD_PEIM_UNDEFINED - implies that a HOB is used, but the package creator does not know the type of HOB.
Examples	HobType="PHIT" HobType="LOAD_PEIM"

6.3.27 ModuleProperties.HOB:SupArchList

Table 170. ModuleProperties.HOB:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this HOB. If this attribute is not specified, then this HOB may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this GUID.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]* (" "[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64"

6.3.28 ModuleProperties.HOB:FeatureFlag

Table 171. ModuleProperties.HOB:FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this HOB. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. This is required to be an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this HOB may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true .
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="true"

6.3.29 ModuleProperties.HOB.HelpText

Table 172. ModuleProperties.HOB.HelpText

Description	This element specifies the HelpText describing correct usage of the HOB.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<HelpText> This Module uses the gEfiHobMemoryAllocStackGuid to build a new memory allocation HOB with old stack info with EfiConventionalMemory type to be reclaimed by DXE core. </HelpText>

6.3.30 ModuleProperties.HOB.HelpText:Lang

Table 173. ModuleProperties.HOB.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	Lang="en-us"

6.4 ModuleSurfaceArea.ClonedFrom

The following is the description of the `ModuleSurfaceArea.ClonedFrom` instance:


```

<ClonedFrom>
  <GUID
    Version=" xs:decimal " {1} >
    RegistryFormatGuid
  </GUID> {1}
</ClonedFrom>

```

6.4.1 ModuleSurfaceArea.ClonedFrom

Table 174. ModuleSurfaceArea.ClonedFrom

Description	If the module sources were copied from an existing Module, then this Section can be used to track the lineage.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.4.2 ClonedFrom.GUID

Table 175. ClonedFrom.GUID

Description	If the module sources were copied from an existing Module, this is the GUID of the Module.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	Registry format GUID of the Module this module was copied from.
Examples	<code><GUID Version="2">27d67720-ea68-48ae-93da-a3a074c90e30</GUID></code>

6.4.3 ClonedFrom.GuidValue:Version

Table 176. ClonedFrom.GuidValue:Version

Description	This is the version of the Module that this module was copied from.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – xs:decimal
Data Constraints	Version number of the existing Module
Examples	<code>Version="1.0"</code>

6.5 ModuleSurfaceArea.LibraryClassDefinitions

The following is the description of the `ModuleSurfaceArea.LibraryClassDefinitions` instance:

```

<LibraryClassDefinitions>
  <LibraryClass
    Usage=" LibUsageType " {1}
    SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
    SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1}
    FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1} >
      <Keyword> xs:NCName </Keyword> {1}
      <RecommendedInstance>
        <GUID
          Version=" xs:decimal " {0,1} >
            RegistryFormatGuid
          </GUID> {1}
        </RecommendedInstance> {0,1}
      <HelpText
        Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
          xs:string
        </HelpText> {0,}
      </LibraryClass> {1,}
    </LibraryClassDefinitions>

```

Table 177. ModuleSurfaceArea.LibraryClassDefinitions

Description	A list the different Library Classes consumed by a driver, core and application module, or produced by a Library module.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.5.1 LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass

Table 178. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass

Description	A Library Class
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.5.2 LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:Usage

Table 179. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:Usage

Description	The Usage attribute which defines whether a Library Instance might be needed by the module, or if this a Library Instance for the specified LibraryClass.
-------------	---

Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	One of the enumerated values: PRODUCES , CONSUMES or SOMETIMES_CONSUMES . UNDEFINED - implies that a library class is used, but the package creator does not know how it used.
Examples	Usage="PRODUCES"

Parameters

CONSUMES

The module requires one and only one library instance for the Library Class specified in the Keyword sub-element.

PRODUCES

This module is a library instance of the Library Class specified in the Keyword sub-element.

SOMETIMES_CONSUMES

The module may need one and only one library instance for the Library Class specified in the Keyword sub-element under some conditions.

6.5.3 LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:SupArchList

Table 180. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this Library Class. If this attribute is not specified, then this Library Class may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this Library Class.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

6.5.4 LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:SupModList

Table 181. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:SupModList

Description	Used to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this Library Class. If this attribute is not specified, then this Library Class may be used with all module types. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that have a module type that is a member of the set of module types specified by this element may use this Library Class.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED, SMM_CORE.
Examples	SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"

6.5.5 LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:FeatureFlag

Table 182. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this Library Class. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. This is required to be an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this Library Class may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true .
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="true"

Table 183. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.Keyword

Description	Used by the UI tools to identify different instances of libraries that provide the library class.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	A single word that starts with an alpha character followed by one or more alphanumeric characters. The underscore “_” character is the only non-alphanumeric character allowed.
Examples	<Keyword>BaseMemoryLib</Keyword> <Keyword>CacheMaintenanceLib</Keyword>

6.5.6 LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance

Table 184. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance

Description	The recommended library instance as defined by the creator of the Library Class Header file.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.5.7 LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance.GU ID

Table 185. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance.GUID

Description	The GUID of the recommended library instance as defined by the creator of the Library Class Header file. This is a required element. If GUID is specified, and the Version attribute is not, then the algorithm to look up the recommended instance is to find the library instance highest version number and a matching GUID.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	A string that represents a GUID in registry format. Not valid if no RecommendedInf attribute specified.
Examples	<code><GUID>AF0DDA2E-EA83-480b-B2CE-FC0BB2F894C2</GUID></code>

6.5.8 LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.RecommendedInstance.GUID:Version

Table 186. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass:RecommendedInstance.GUID:Version

Description	The version of the recommended library instance as defined by the creator of the Library Class Header file. If this attribute is not specified, then the recommended library instance is the highest version number with a matching GUID.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:decimal
Data Constraints	Unsigned decimal number.
Examples	<code>Version="1.0"</code> <code>Version="2.75"</code>

6.5.9 LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.HelpText

Table 187. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.HelpText

Description	Used by the UI tools to provide information about this library class, it's uses and functionality.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><HelpText> Base Memory Library that uses MMX registers for high performance. Optimized for use in DXE. </HelpText></code>

6.5.10 LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.HelpText:Lang

Table 188. LibraryClassDefinitions.LibraryClass.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
-------------	---

Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us"

6.6 ModuleSurfaceArea.SourceFiles

This section is required if and only if this Module is NOT a Binary Module. If this is a binary module, then this section is not permitted.

The following is the description of the **ModuleSurfaceArea.SourceFiles** instance:

```

<SourceFiles>
  <Filename
    Family=" FamilyType " {0,1}
    SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
    SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1}
    FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1} >
      xs:anyURI
  </Filename> {1,}
  <HelpText
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:string
  </HelpText> {0,}
</SourceFiles>

```

Table 189. ModuleSurfaceArea.SourceFiles

Description	This element contains a list of all text-based code (including Unicode text) files that are included with this module.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.6.1 SourceFiles.Filename

Table 190. SourceFiles.Filename

Description	Source files used by tools to create binary files.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:anyURI
Data Constraints	The path (relative to the Module "root" directory) and filename of the file (as specified in the Distribution Content File.)
Examples	<pre> <Filename>SwitchStack.c</Filename> <Filename SupArchList="IA32">x86LowLevel.c</ Filename> <Filename SupArchList="IA32">Ia32/Non-existing.c</ Filename> </pre>

6.6.2 SourceFiles.Filename:Family

Table 191. SourceFiles.FileName:Family

Description	The Family attribute is used to restrict usage to a given family of compilers, such as GCC or MSFT. Since not all code processing tools use the same syntax, especially for assembly, this field can be used to identify different syntax. If not specified, then any family can use this file.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – FamilyType
Data Constraints	[A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9] *
Examples	Family="GCC" Family="MSFT"

6.6.3 SourceFiles.FileName:SupArchList

Table 192. SourceFiles.FileName:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this filename. If this attribute is not specified, then this filename may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this filename.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9] * (" " [A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9] *) *
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

6.6.4 SourceFiles.FileName:SupModList

Table 193. SourceFiles.FileName:SupModList

Description	Used by libraries to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this file. If this attribute is not specified, then this file may be used by any module type. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules are in a subset of the module types specified by this element may use this file.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, TOOL, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED.

Distribution Packaging Specification

Examples	<pre>SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"</pre>
----------	--

6.6.5 SourceFiles.FileName:FeatureFlag

Table 194. SourceFiles.FileName:FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this filename. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. This is an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this filename may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true .
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="true"

6.6.6 SourceFiles.HelpText

Table 195. SourceFiles.HelpText

Description	Used by the UI tools to provide information about source files in this module.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<HelpText> Sample driver using HII protocol. </HelpText>

6.6.7 SourceFiles.HelpText:Lang

Table 196. SourceFiles.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:Language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	Lang="en-us"

6.7 ModuleSurfaceArea.BinaryFiles

If no Source Files are specified, then the files listed here will not be processed during a build. They are either PI FFS sections, UEFI images or Binary files.

The following is the description of the **ModuleSurfaceArea.BinaryFiles** instance:

```

<BinaryFiles>
  <BinaryFile>
    <Filename
      FileType=" FileType " {1}
      SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
      SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1}
      FeatureFlag=" FeatureFlagExpression " {0,1} >
      GUID=" RegistryFormatGuid " {0,1} >
      xs:anyURI
    </Filename> {1,}
    <AsBuilt> ... </AsBuilt> {0,}
    <HelpText
      Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:string
    </HelpText> {0,}
  </BinaryFile> {1,}
</BinaryFiles>

```

Table 197. ModuleSurfaceArea.BinaryFiles

Description	This element contains a list of all binary files that are included with a module. If Source files have been specified, these files may be included in a module. Typically, this section is used for distribution of binary only code.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.7.1 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile

Table 198. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile

Description	User can enter any data that might help other developers using this source code.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.7.2 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename

Table 199. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename

Description	Module Relative path and filename for a binary file.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:anyURI
Data Constraints	The path (relative to the Module's "root" directory and filename of the file (as specified in the Distribution Content File.)
Examples	<pre><Filename FileType="PE32">SwitchStack.efi</ Filename> <Filename SupArchList="IA32" FileType="BIN" > IA32/ LowLevel.bin </Filename> <Filename FileType="BIN" SupArchList="X64"> X64/ LowLevel.bin </Filename></pre>

6.7.3 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename:FileType

Table 200. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename:FileType

Description	Specify the type of binary file provided.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – BinFileType
Data Constraints	One of the enumerated values: GUID, FREEFORM, UEFI_IMAGE, PE32, PIC, PEI_DEPEX, DXE_DEPEX, TE, VER, UI, BIN, FV, SMM_DEPEX, COMPAT16, DISPOSABLE
Examples	<pre>FileType="PE32" FileType="UI"</pre>

6.7.4 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename:SupArchList

Table 201. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.FileName:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this filename. If this attribute is not specified, then this filename may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this filename.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]*) *
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

6.7.5 BinaryFiles.FileName:SupModList

Table 202. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.FileName:SupModList

Description	Used by libraries to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this file. If this attribute is not specified, then this file may be used by any module type. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules are in a subset of the module types specified by this element may use this file.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, TOOL, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED.
Examples	SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"

6.7.6 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.FileName:FeatureFlag

Table 203. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename:FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this filename. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. This is required to be an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this filename may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true .
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="PcdSupportUpdateCapsuleRest"

6.7.7 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename:Guid

Table 204. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename:GUID

Description	An optional GUID attribute to the BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.Filename element which is only valid if the <i>FileType</i> is set to " FREEFORM "; FREEFORM is shorthand notation for EFI_SECTION_FREEFORM_SUBTYPE_GUID .
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	This attribute is only legal if the filename's <i>FileType</i> attribute is set to " FREEFORM ".
Examples	GUID="964052d9-3724-4777-b220-0b42ccf7b6de"

6.7.8 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt

If this is a binary module distribution, this section contains information about how the module was coded, such as Compiler Tools, Flags, PCDs (only PatchPcd, Pcd and/or PcdEx) and Library Class Instances used to build the binary.

```

<AsBuilt>
  <PatchPcdValue> ... </PatchPcdValue> {0,}
  <PcdExValue> ... </PcdExValue> {0,}
  <LibraryInstances> ... </LibraryInstances> {0,1}
  <BuildFlags> Any attributes or content is permitted
</BuildFlags> {0,}
</AsBuilt> {0,}

```

Table 205. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt

Description	This section covers the information required by developers receiving a binary distribution. If this is a binary module distribution, this section contains information about how the module was coded, such as Compiler Tools, Flags, PCDs (only PatchPcd, Pcd and/or PcdEx) and Library Class Instances used to build the binary.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.7.9 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue

```

<PatchPcdValue>
  <TokenSpaceGuidValue> RegistryFormatGuid </
TokenSpaceGuidValue> {1}
  <PcdCName> xs:NCName </PcdCName> {1}
  <Token> HexNumber </Token> {1}
  <DatumType> PcdDatumType </DatumType> {1}
  <MaxDatumSize> HexNumber </MaxDatumSize> {0,1}
  <Value> xs:normalizedString </Value> {1}
  <Offset> HexNumber </Offset> {1}
  <HelpText> ... </HelpText> {0,}
  <PcdError> ... </PcdError> {0,}
</PatchPcdValue>

```

Table 206. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue

Description	An optional section that can describes any patchable PCDs that may be pertinent to this binary module.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.7.10 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.TokenSpaceGuid Value

Table 207. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.TokenSpaceGuidValue

Description	The GUID value TokenSpaceGuid that defines this PCD.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	Registry format GUID of the Token Space GUID.
Examples	<code><TokenSpaceGuidValue> 914AEBE7-4635-459b-AA1C-11E219B03A10 </TokenSpaceGuidValue></code>

6.7.11 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.Token

Table 208. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.Token

Description	The Token Number of this PCD.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – HexNumber
Data Constraints	The hex token number used during the platform build. This element must contain one to eight hexadecimal characters.
Examples	<code><Token>0x00000006</Token></code>

6.7.12 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdCName

Table 209. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdCName

Description	The name of this PCD.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	A string that starts with a letter followed by any combination of letters, digits, underscores, and periods. No whitespace characters are allowed.
Examples	<code><PcdCName> PcdDebugPrintErrorLevel </PcdCName></code>

6.7.13 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.DatumType

Table 210. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.DatumType

Description	The data type of this PCD.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	One of the following enumerated data types: UINT8, UINT16, UINT32, UINT64, BOOLEAN, or VOID*
Examples	<code><DatumType> VOID* </DatumType></code>

6.7.14 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.MaxDatumSize

Table 211. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.MaxDatumSize

Description	The maximum data size allocated for this PCD; this is required for VOID* Pcd Datum Types.
Required	NO (Depending on the PCD's datum type)
Data Type	Element – HexNumber
Data Constraints	A hex value.
Examples	<code><MaxDatumSize> 0x0000001F </MaxDatumSize></code>

6.7.15 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.Value

Table 212. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.Value

Description	The value that was used at build time in the binary.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	A string that starts with a letter followed by any combination of letters, digits, underscores, and periods. Whitespace characters are allowed.
Examples	<code><Value>"en-US ; fr-FR"<Value></code>

6.7.16 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.Offset

Table 213. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.Offset

Description	The offset into the binary of this PCD.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – HexNumber
Data Constraints	The hex address into the binary image of the PCD
Examples	<code><Offset> 0x00000200 </Offset></code>

6.7.17 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.HelpText

Table 214. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.HelpText

Description	A complete description of a how the PCD is implemented.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.

Examples	<pre><HelpText> The PcdDebugPropertyMask is an 8-bit mask of debug properties that may be set to a unique value for each module in the platform. This PCD Entry is available to all CPU and Module types and was configured as BINARY_PATCHABLE and the following bit settings: #define DEBUG_PROPERTY_DEBUG_ASSERT_ENABLED 0x01 #define DEBUG_PROPERTY_DEBUG_PRINT_ENABLED 0x02 </HelpText></pre>
----------	--

6.7.18 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.HelpText:Lang

Table 215. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

6.7.19 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ValidValueList

Table 216. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ValidValueList

Description	A list of valid values
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	Space Separated list of values. Restricted to the data type of this PCD. Use of the L"string" is permitted to specify a UTF-8 text string that will be converted to UNICODE (UCS2) format in the code. Words that are not quoted are considered to be enumerations.
Examples	<ValidValueList> 0xb0000000 0xb0000001 </ValidValueList> <ValidValueList> "Blue" "Red" "White" </ValidValueList> <ValidValueList> orange peach apple pear </ValidValueList>

6.7.20 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ValidValueList:Lang

Table 217. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ValidValueList:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us”.
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

6.7.21 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ValidValueRange

Table 218. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ValidValueRange

Description	The valid range of values using C style nomenclature.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	This is required to be an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. All other values must be numeric.
Examples	<pre><ValidValueRange> (0xb0000000 LE PcdCNameGoesHere) AND (PcdCNameGoesHere GT 0x00010000) </ ValidValueRange> <ValidValueRange> PcdCNameGoesHere LT 0x10001FFF AND (PcdCNameGoesHere NOT EQ 0x8000000) </ ValidValueRange></pre>

6.7.22 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.Expression

Table 219. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.Expression

Description	An in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, AND, OR, GT, GE, EQ, LE, LT and XOR) and parenthesis are recommended. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	The expression must evaluate to true or false.
Examples	<pre><Expression> (NOT gPcdRecoveryMode) AND gPcdS3Resume </Expression></pre>

6.7.23 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError

```

<PcdError>
  Choice (One and only one of the following must be selected)
    <ValidValueList
      Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
        xs:normalizedString
      </ValidValueList>
    <ValidValueRange> xs:normalizedString </ValidValueRange>
    <Expression> xs:normalizedString </Expression>
  End Choice
  <ErrorNumber> HexNumber </ErrorNumber> {1}
  <ErrorMessage
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:string
    </ErrorMessage> {0,}
</PcdError>
    
```

Table 220. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError

Description	Valid Error messages implemented in this module for the PatchPcd entry. Only One Error Number per PcdError, (multiple ErrorMessage entries are permitted) and multiple PcdError elements are permitted.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.7.24 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ErrorNumber

Table 221. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ErrorNumber

Description	Valid error number per specifications.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – HexNumber
Data Constraints	A hexadecimal value for the error message as defined by specifications.
Examples	<pre> <ErrorNumber>0xb0000000</ErrorNumber> <ErrorNumber>0xb0000001</ErrorNumber> </pre>

6.7.25 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage

Table 222. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage

Description	An error message for conditional failures of the choices above.
-------------	---

Module Surface Area Description

Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<ErrorMessage> The value specified exceeds the maximum value allowed. </ErrorMessage>

6.7.26 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage:Lang

Table 223. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PatchPcdValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

6.7.27 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue

```

<PcdExValue>
  <TokenSpaceGuidValue> RegistryFormatGuid </
TokenSpaceGuidValue> {1}
  <PcdCName> xs:NCName </PcdCName> {1}
  <Token> HexNumber </Token> {1}
  <DatumType> PcdDatumType </DatumType> {1}
  <MaxDatumSize> HexNumber </MaxDatumSize> {0,1}
  <Value> xs:normalizedString </Value> {1}
  <HelpText> ... </HelpText> {0,}
  <PcdError> ... </PcdError> {0,}
</PcdExValue>
    
```

Table 224. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue

Description	An optional section that can describes any dynamic PCDs that may be pertinent to this binary module.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.7.28 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdCName

Table 225. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdCName

Description	The name of this PCD.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	A string that starts with a letter followed by any combination of letters, digits, underscores, and periods. No whitespace characters are allowed.

Examples	<code><PcdCName> PcdDebugPrintErrorLevel </PcdCName></code>
----------	---

6.7.29 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.TokenSpaceGuidValue

Table 226. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.TokenSpaceGuidValue

Description	The GUID value TokenSpaceGuid that defines this PCD.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	Registry format GUID of the Token Space GUID.
Examples	<code><TokenSpaceGuidValue> 914AEBE7-4635-459b-AA1C-11E219B03A10 </TokenSpaceGuidValue></code>

6.7.30 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.Token

Table 227. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.Token

Description	The Token Number of this PCD.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – HexNumber
Data Constraints	The hex token number used during the platform build. This element must contain one to eight hexadecimal characters.
Examples	<code><Token>0x00000006</Token></code>

6.7.31 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.DatumType

Table 228. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.DatumType

Description	The data type of this PCD.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	One of the following enumerated data types: UINT8, UINT16, UINT32, UINT64, BOOLEAN, or VOID*
Examples	<code><DatumType> VOID* </DatumType></code>

6.7.32 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.MaxDatumSize

Table 229. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.MaxDatumSize

Description	The maximum data size allocated for this PCD; this is required for VOID* Pcd Datum Types.
Required	NO (Depending on the PCD's datum type)
Data Type	Element – HexNumber
Data Constraints	A hex value.

Examples	<code><MaxDatumSize> 0x0000001F </MaxDatumSize></code>
----------	--

6.7.33 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.Value

Table 230. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.Value

Description	The value that was used at build time in the binary.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	A string that starts with a letter followed by any combination of letters, digits, underscores, and periods. Whitespace characters are allowed.
Examples	<code><Value>en-US ; fr-FR<Value></code>

6.7.34 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.HelpText

Table 231. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.HelpText

Description	A complete description of a how the PCD is implemented.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><HelpText> Gets the base address of PCI Express. This internal functions retrieves PCI Express Base Address via a PCD entry PcdPciExpressBaseAddress and returns the base address of PCI Express. </HelpText></code>

6.7.35 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.HelpText:Lang

Table 232. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	<code>Lang="en-us"</code> <code>Lang="fra"</code>

6.7.36 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError

```

<PcdError>
  Choice (One and only one of the following must be selected)
  <ValidValueList
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:normalizedString
  </ValidValueList>
</PcdError>

```

```

    </ValidValueList>
    <ValidValueRange> xs:normalizedString </ValidValueRange>
    <Expression> xs:normalizedString </Expression>
  End Choice
  <ErrorNumber> HexNumber </ErrorNumber> {1}
  <ErrorMessage
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:string
  </ErrorMessage> {0,}
</PcdError>

```

Table 233. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError

Description	Valid Error messages implemented in this module for the dynamic PcdEx entry. Only One Error Number per PcdError elements (multiple ErrorMessage entries are permitted) and multiple PcdError elements are permitted.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.7.37 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ValidValueList

Table 234. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ValidValueList

Description	A list of valid values
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	Space Separated list of values. Restricted to the data type of this PCD. Use of the L"string" is permitted to specify a UTF-8 text string that will be converted to UNICODE (UCS2) format in the code. Words that are not quoted are considered to be enumerations.
Examples	<pre> <ValidValueList> 0xb0000000 0xb0000001 </ ValidValueList> <ValidValueList> "Blue" "Red" "White" </ ValidValueList> <ValidValueList> orange peach apple pear </ ValidValueList> </pre>

6.7.38 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ValidValueList:Lang

Table 235. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ValidValueList:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

6.7.39 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ValidValueRange

Table 236. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ValidValueRange

Description	The valid range of values using C style nomenclature.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	This is required to be an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. All other values must be numeric.
Examples	<ValidValueRange> (0xb0000000 LE PcdCNameGoesHere) AND (PcdCNameGoesHere GT 0x00010000) </ ValidValueRange> <ValidValueRange> PcdCNameGoesHere LT 0x10001FFF AND (PcdCNameGoesHere NOT EQ 0x8000000) </ ValidValueRange>

6.7.40 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.Expression

Table 237. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.Expression

Description	An in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, AND, OR, GT, GE, EQ, LE, LT and XOR) and parenthesis are recommended. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	The expression must evaluate to true or false.
Examples	<Expression> (NOT gPcdRecoveryMode) AND gPcdS3Resume </Expression>

6.7.41 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ErrorNumber

Table 238. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ErrorNumber

Description	Valid error number per specifications.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – HexNumber
Data Constraints	A hexadecimal value for the error message as defined by specifications.
Examples	<ErrorNumber>0xb0000000</ErrorNumber> <ErrorNumber>0xb0000001</ErrorNumber>

6.7.42 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage

Table 239. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage

Description	An error message for conditional failures of the choices above.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<ErrorMessage> The value specified exceeds the maximum value allowed. </ErrorMessage>

6.7.43 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage:Lang

Table 240. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.PcdExValue.PcdError.ErrorMessage:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
-------------	---

Distribution Packaging Specification

Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

6.7.44 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.LibraryInstances

```
<LibraryInstances>
  <GUID
    Version=" xs:decimal " {1} >
    RegistryFormatGuid
  </GUID> {1,}
</LibraryInstances>
```

Table 241. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.LibraryInstances

Description	This section is used to define the Library Class Instances that were linked to the Module..
Required	yes
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.7.45 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.LibraryInstances.GUID

Table 242. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.LibraryInstances:GUID

Description	The Registry Format GUID of the library Instance.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	A string that represents a GUID in registry format.
Examples	<GUID>fd44e603-002a-4b29-9f5f-529e815b6165</GUID>

6.7.46 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.LibraryInstances.GUID:Version

Table 243. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.LibraryInstances:Version

Description	The Version Number of the Library Instance.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:decimal
Data Constraints	A decimal number
Examples	Version="1.0"

6.7.47 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.BuildFlags

Table 244. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.AsBuilt.BuildFlags

Description	This section shows the build tool flags that were used during the creation of the module. Of specific interest are flags that define values on the compiler command line, as well as possible optimizations. Any Attributes to this element are also permitted.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex, mixed="true"
Data Constraints	None – any attributes and/or content
Examples	<code><BuildFlags MSVS="8.0"> /EXPORT:InitializeDriver=\$(IMAGE_ENTRY_POINT) / ALIGN:4096 /SUBSYSTEM:CONSOLE </BuildFlags></code>

6.7.48 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.HelpText

Table 245. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.HelpText

Description	Used by the UI tools to provide information about a binary file's use and functionality.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><HelpText> Sample driver using HII protocol. </ HelpText></code>

6.7.49 BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.HelpText:Lang

Table 246. BinaryFiles.BinaryFile.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	<code>Lang="en-us"</code>

6.8 ModuleSurfaceArea.PackageDependencies

The following is the description of the ModuleSurfaceArea.PackageDependencies instance:

```

<PackageDependencies>
  <Package
    SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
    SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1}
    FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1} >
      <Description
        Lang=" xs:language " {0,1}>
          xs:string
      </Description> {0,}
      <GUID
        Version=" xs:decimal " {0,1} >
          RegistryFormatGuid
      </GUID> {1}
    </Package> {1,}
  </PackageDependencies>

```

Table 247. ModuleSurfaceArea.PackageDependencies

Description	This element contains a list of all packages a module depends on.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.8.1 PackageDependencies.Package

Table 248. PackageDependencies.Package

Description	This element specifies a package required by this module to properly build or function.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.8.2 PackageDependencies.Package:SupArchList

Table 249. PackageDependencies.Package:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this package. If this attribute is not specified, then this package may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this package.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType

Distribution Packaging Specification

Data Constraints	<code>[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]*)*</code>
Examples	<code>SupArchList="IA32"</code> <code>SupArchList="IA32 X64"</code> <code>SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"</code>

6.8.3 PackageDependencies.Package:SupModList

Table 250. PackageDependencies.Package:SupModList

Description	Used by libraries to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this package dependency. If this attribute is not specified, then this package dependency may be used by any module type. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules are in a subset of the module types specified by this element may use this package dependency.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, TOOL, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED.
Examples	SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"

6.8.4 PackageDependencies.Package:FeatureFlag

Table 251. PackageDependencies.Package:FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this package. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. This is required to be an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this package may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true .
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="true"

6.8.5 PackageDependencies.Package.Description

Table 252. PackageDependencies.Package.Description

Description	This element describes the reason for the dependency.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<Description> Requires Status Code Library Functions </Description>

6.8.6 PackageDependencies.Package.Description:Lang

Table 253. PackageDependencies.Package.Description:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	Lang="en-us"

6.8.7 PackageDependencies.Package.GUID

Table 254. PackageDependencies.Package.GUID

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	Lang="en-us"

6.8.8 PackageDependencies.Package.GUID:Version

Table 255. PackageDependencies.Package.GUID:Version

Description	This attribute specifies the version of a package required by this module to properly build or function. If this attribute is listed, ONLY the specific GUID/Version package can be used. If this attribute is not specified, the highest version of a package can be used.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:decimal
Data Constraints	[0-9]+((\.)?[0-9]+)*
Examples	Version="1.0" Version="1.10"

6.9 ModuleSurfaceArea.Guids

It is permissible for a module to list a GUID twice, once for CONSUMES and another for PRODUCES, if and only if the GUID type is transformed by the module.

The following is the description of the **ModuleSurfaceArea.Guids** instance:

```
<Guids>
  <GuidCName> ... </GuidCName> {1,}
</Guids>
```

Table 256. ModuleSurfaceArea.Guids

Description	This is a list of Guids produced or consumed by this module.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.9.1 GuidCName

```
<GuidCName
  Usage=" UsageType " {1}
  GuidType=" GuidListType " {1}
  SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
  SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1}
  FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1} >
  <CName> xs:NCName </CName> {1}
  <GUID> RegistryFormatGuid </GUID> {0,1}
  <VariableName> xs:normalizedString </VariableName> {0,1}
  <HelpText
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:string
  </HelpText> {0,}
</GuidCName>
```

Table 257. GuidCName

Description	This element specifies information about Guids used by, or produced by this module. The GUID CName specified in this section must be defined in a package declaration. Protocols and PPIs do not need to be listed in this section.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.9.2 GuidCName:Usage

Table 258. GuidCName:Usage

Description	This element specifies the GUID Usage.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – UsageType

Data Constraints	<p>One of the enumerated values: CONSUMES, PRODUCES, SOMETIMES_CONSUMES or SOMETIMES_PRODUCES</p> <p>PRODUCES means that a module will produce a GUID that does not fit into the defined PROTOCOL or PPI types.</p> <p>CONSUMES means that a module may use this GUID that does not fit into the defined PROTOCOL or PPI types.</p> <p>UNDEFINED - implies that a GUID is used, but the package creator does not know how it used.</p>
Examples	<p>Usage="PRODUCES"</p> <p>Usage="CONSUMES"</p>

Parameters

CONSUMES

The module will use the named GUID. For GUID type (specified in the Type attribute) of:

- Event - CONSUMES means that the module has an event waiting to be signaled (i.e., the module registers a notification function and calls the function when it is signaled).
 - System Table - this means that the module will use a GUIDed entry in the system table.
- EFI Variable - this means that the module may use the variable entry.
- Formset - the formset may be registered into HII by this module.
- TokenSpaceGuid - this means that an Token Space GUID will be required for PCD entries used in this module.
- Hob - this means that a HOB may need to be present in the system.
- File/FV - this means that a file must be present in an FV, such as a module that loads a processor microcode patch file.
- GUID - this means that a module may use this GUID that does not fit into the defined GUID types.

PRODUCES

This module always produces a named GUID. For GUID type (specified in the Type attribute) of:

- Boot Modes - this means that the module will change the boot mode.
- Event - this means that module will signal all events in an event group.
- System Table - this means that the module will produce a GUIDed entry in the system table.
- EFI Variable - this means that the module will write the variable.
- Formset - PRODUCES is not valid for this GUID type.
- TokenSpaceGuid - PRODUCES is not valid for this GUID type.
- Hob - this means that the HOB will be produced by the module.
- File/FV - this means that a module creates a file that is present in an FV, such as a file that contains a microcode patch.

- GUID - this means that a module will produce a GUID that does not fit into the defined PROTOCOL, PPI or GUID types.

6.9.3 GuidCName:GuidType

Table 259. GuidCName:GuidType

Description	This element specifies the type of GUID.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – GuidListType
Data Constraints	One or more of the enumerated values: Event , File , FV , GUID , HII , HOB , SystemTable , TokenSpaceGuid or Variable . UNDEFINED - implies that a GUID is used, but the package creator does not know the GUID's type.
Examples	GuidType="Event" GuidType="TokenSpaceGuid"

Parameters

Event

The functions that make up the Event used during preboot to create, close, signal, and wait for events as defined in the UEFI specification.

SystemTable

As defined in the PI Specification, the UEFI System Table is passed to every executable image in the DXE phase. The UEFI System Table contains a pointer to the following:

- "UEFI Boot Services Table"
- "UEFI Runtime Services Table"

It also contains pointers to the console devices and their associated I/O protocols. In addition, the UEFI System Table contains a pointer to the UEFI Configuration Table, which contains a list of GUID/pointer pairs. The UEFI Configuration Table may include tables such as the "DXE Services Dependencies", HOB list, ACPI table, SMBIOS table, and SAL System table.

The UEFI Boot Services Table contains services to access the contents of the handle database. The handle database is where protocol interfaces produced by drivers are registered. Other drivers can use the UEFI Boot Services to look up these services produced by other drivers.

Variable

The UEFI and PI specifications define UEFI Variables as key/value pairs that consist of identifying information plus attributes (the key) and arbitrary data (the value). Variables are intended for use as a means to store data that is passed between the UEFI environment implemented in the platform and UEFI OS loaders and other applications that run in the UEFI environment.

HII

These GUIDs refer to the core code and services that are required for an implementation of the Human Interface Infrastructure (HII).

TokenSpaceGuid

These GUIDs are used as a definition of a group of Platform Configuration Database (PCD) entries. Different packages of PCDs are identified by a Token Space GUID. Within each of these packages, the individual PCD's Token number is unique. PCDs are then identified by the Token Space GUID and the PCD's Token number.

HOB

These GUIDs are for manipulation of the PEI-DXE Hand Off Blocks. The HOB types are defined in the PI Specification.

GUID

These are GUIDs that do not fall into PPI, PROTOCOL or any of the above definitions.

6.9.4 GuidName:SupArchList

Table 260. GuidName:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this GUID. If this attribute is not specified, then this GUID may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this GUID.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

6.9.5 GuidName:SupModList

Table 261. GuidName:SupModList

Description	Used by libraries to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this guid. If this attribute is not specified, then this guid may be used by any module type. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules are in a subset of the module types specified by this element may use this guid.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, TOOL, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED.
Examples	SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"

6.9.6 GuidName:FeatureFlag

Table 262. GuidCName.FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this GUID. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. This is required to be an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this GUID may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true .
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="true"

6.9.7 GuidCName.CName

Table 263. GuidCName.CName

Description	This element specifies the C name of the GUID.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	Must be a valid GUID C name
Examples	<CName> gEfiEventReadyToBootGuid </CName> <CName>gEfiConsoleInDeviceGuid</CName>

6.9.8 GuidCName.VariableName

Table 264. GuidCName.VariableName

Description	This element specifies the Variable name for a Variable GUID.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	Must be a valid Variable Name in either Hex Array (little endian) or L"string" (C style.) This element is only valid for an EFI Variable GUID type.
Examples	<VariableName> L"Reset" </VariableName> <VariableName> 0x52 0x00 0x65 0x00 0x73 0x00 0x65 0x00 0x74 0x00 </VariableName>

6.9.9 GuidCName.GUID

Table 265. GuidCName.GUID

Description	This element specifies the GUID value of a GUID.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	Registry format GUID of a GUID.
Examples	<code><GUID>5e0e9358-46b6-4ae2-8218-4ab8b9bbdcec</GUID></code> <code><GUID>b6ec423c-21d2-490d-85c6-dd5864eaa674</GUID></code>

6.9.10 GuidCName.HelpText

Table 266. GuidCName.HelpText

Description	This element specifies the HelpText describing correct usage of the GUID
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><HelpText> Check the device handle, if it is a hot plug device, do not put the device path into ConInDev, and install gEfiConsoleInDeviceGuid to the device handle directly. The policy is, make hot plug device plug in and play immediately. </HelpText></code>

6.9.11 GuidCName.HelpText:Lang

Table 267. GuidCName.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	<code>Lang="en-us"</code>

6.10 ModuleSurfaceArea.Protocols

The following is the description of the `ModuleSurfaceArea.Protocols` instance:

```

<Protocols>
  <Protocol
    Usage=" ProtocolUsageType " {1}
    Notify=" xs:boolean " {0,1}
    SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
    SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1}
    FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1} >
      <CName> xs:NCName </CName> {1}
      <GUID> RegistryFormatGuid </GUID> {0,1}
      <HelpText
        Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
          xs:string
        </HelpText> {0,}
      </Protocol> {1,}
    </Protocols>

```

Table 268. ModuleSurfaceArea.Protocols

Description	This element contains a list of all Protocols a module depends on or produces.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.10.1 Protocols.Protocol

Table 269. Protocols.Protocol

Description	This element specifies the C name of a Protocol required by this module to properly build or function, or produced by this module.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – ComplexType
Data Constraints	Only child elements are allowed within the element
Examples	N/A

6.10.2 Protocols.Protocol:Usage

Table 270. Protocols.Protocol:Usage

Description	This attribute specifies whether the Protocol is needed or produced by the module.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – ProtocolUsageType

Data Constraints	One of the enumerated values: CONSUMES , PRODUCES , SOMETIMES_CONSUMES , SOMETIMES_PRODUCES , TO_START or BY_START . UNDEFINED - implies that a Protocol is used, but the package creator does not know how it used.
Examples	Usage="PRODUCES" Usage="CONSUMES"

Parameters

CONSUMES

This module does not install the protocol, but needs to locate a protocol. Not valid if the Notify attribute is true.

PRODUCES

This module will install this protocol. Not valid if the Notify attribute is true.

SOMETIMES_CONSUMES

This module does not install the protocol, but may need to locate a protocol under certain conditions, (such as if it is present.) If the Notify attribute is set, then the module will use the protocol, named by GUID, via a registry protocol notify mechanism.

SOMETIMES_PRODUCES

This module will install this protocol under certain conditions. Not valid if the Notify attribute is true.

TO_START

The protocol is consumed by a Driver Binding protocol Start function. Thus the protocol is used as part of the UEFI driver model. Not valid if the Notify attribute is true.

BY_START

The protocol is produced by a Driver Binding protocol Start function. Thus the protocol is used as part of the UEFI driver model. Not valid if the Notify attribute is true.

6.10.3 Protocols.Protocol:Notify

Table 271. Protocols.Protocol:Notify

Description	This attribute specifies whether this is a Protocol or ProtocolNotify. If set, then the module will use this protocol, named by GUID, via a registry protocol notify mechanism.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:boolean
Data Constraints	Only required for ProtocolNotify, in which the value must be set to true. The default (non-specified) value is false.
Examples	Notify="true"

6.10.4 Protocols.Protocol:SupArchList

Table 272. Protocols.Protocol:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this protocol. If this attribute is not specified, then this protocol may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this protocol.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

6.10.5 Protocols.Protocol:SupModList

Table 273. Protocols.Protocol:SupModList

Description	Used by libraries to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this guid. If this attribute is not specified, then this guid may be used by any module type. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules are in a subset of the module types specified by this element may use this guid.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, TOOL, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED.

Distribution Packaging Specification

Examples	<pre>SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"</pre>
----------	--

6.10.6 Protocols.Protocol:FeatureFlag

Table 274. Protocols.Protocol:FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this protocol. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. This is required to be an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this protocol may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true .
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="false"

6.10.7 Protocols.Protocol.CName

Table 275. Protocols.Protocols.CName

Description	This element specifies the C name of the Protocol.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	Must be a valid GUID C name
Examples	<CName>gEfiBlockIoProtocolGuid</CName> <CName> gEfiBlockIoProtocolGuid </CName>

6.10.8 Protocols.Protocol.GUID

Table 276. Protocols.Protocol.GUID

Description	This element specifies the GUID value of a Protocol.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	Registry format GUID of a Protocol.
Examples	<GUID>5e0e9358-46b6-4ae2-8218-4ab8b9bbdcec</GUID> <GUID>b6ec423c-21d2-490d-85c6-dd5864eaa674</GUID>

6.10.9 Protocols.Protocol.HelpText

Table 277. Protocols.Protocol.HelpText

Description	This element specifies the HelpText describing correct usage of the Protocol
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><HelpText> The Block I/O Protocol provides services to read, write, and flush block to a block oriented storage device such as a hard disk, CD-ROM, DVD, and floppy. This Protocol is available to all CPU types, but is restricted for use by DXE_DRIVER, UEFI_DRIVER, and UEFI_APPLICATION module types. </HelpText></code>

6.10.10 Protocols.Protocol.HelpText:Lang

Table 278. Protocols.Protocol.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	<code>Lang="en-us"</code>

6.11 ModuleSurfaceArea.PPIs

The following is the description of the `ModuleSurfaceArea.PPIs` instance:

```
<PPIs>
  <Ppi
    Usage=" UsageType " {1}
    Notify=" xs:boolean " {0,1}
    SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
    SupModList_ " ModuleListType " {0,1}
    FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1} >
      <CName> xs:NCName </CName> {1}
      <GUID> RegistryFormatGuid </GUID> {0,1}
      <HelpText
```

```
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >  
      xs:string  
    </HelpText> {0,}  
  </Ppi> {1,}  
</PPIs>
```

Table 279. ModuleSurfaceArea.PPIs

Description	This element contains a list of all PPIs a module depends on or produces.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.11.1 PPIs.Ppi

Table 280. PPIs.Ppi

Description	This element specifies the C name of a Ppi required by this module to properly build or function, or produced by this module.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – ComplexType
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.11.2 PPIs.Ppi:Usage

Table 281. PPIs.Ppi:Usage

Description	This attribute specifies whether the Ppi is required or produced by the module.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – UsageType
Data Constraints	One of the enumerated values: CONSUMES , PRODUCES , SOMETIMES_CONSUMES or SOMETIMES_PRODUCES . UNDEFINED - implies that a PPI is used, but the package creator does not know how it used.
Examples	Usage="PRODUCES" Usage="CONSUMES"

Parameters

CONSUMES

This module does not install the PPI, but needs to locate a PPI. Not valid if the Notify attribute is true.

PRODUCES

This module will load this PPI. Not valid if the Notify attribute is true.

SOMETIMES_CONSUMES

This module does not install the PPI, but may need to locate a PPI under certain conditions or execution paths. If the Notify attribute is set, then the module will use the PPI, named by GUID, via a registry PPI notify mechanism.

SOMETIME_PRODUCES

This module will load this PPI under certain conditions or execution paths. Not valid if the Notify attribute is true.

6.11.3 PPIs.Ppi:Notify

Table 282. Ppis.Ppi:Notify

Description	This attribute specifies whether this is a Ppi or PpiNotify. If set to, the module requires or consumes a PPI, named by GUID, via a register PPI notify mechanism.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:boolean
Data Constraints	Only required for PpiNotify, in which the value must be set to true. The default (non-specified) value is false.
Examples	Notify="true"

6.11.4 PPIs.Ppi:SupArchList

Table 283. PPIs.Ppi:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this Ppi. If this attribute is not specified, then this Ppi may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this Ppi.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]* (" "[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

6.11.5 PPIs.Ppi:SupModList

Table 284. PPIs.Ppi:SupModList

Description	Used by libraries to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this ppi. If this attribute is not specified, then this ppi may be used by any module type. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules are in a subset of the module types specified by this element may use this ppi.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, TOOL, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED.

Examples	<pre>SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"</pre>
----------	--

6.11.6 PPIs.Ppi:FeatureFlag

Table 285. PPIs.Ppi:FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this Ppi. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. This is required to be an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this Ppi may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true .
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="false"

6.11.7 PPIs.Ppi.CName

Table 286. PPIs.Ppi.CName

Description	This element specifies the C name of the Ppi.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	Must be a valid C name.
Examples	<CName>gEfiDxeIplPpiGuid</CName> <CName>gEfiPeiStallPpiGuid</CName>

6.11.8 PPIs.Ppi.GUID

Table 287. PPIs.Ppi.GUID

Description	This element specifies the GUID value of a Ppi.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – RegistryFormatGuid
Data Constraints	Registry format GUID of a Ppi.
Examples	<GUID>5e0e9358-46b6-4ae2-8218-4ab8b9bbdcec</GUID> <GUID>b6ec423c-21d2-490d-85c6-dd5864eaa674</GUID>

6.11.9 PPIs.Ppi.HelpText

Table 288. PPIs.Ppi.HelpTex

Description	This element specifies the HelpText describing correct usage of the Ppi
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<HelpText> The Block I/O Ppi provides services to read, write, and flush block to a block oriented storage device such as a hard disk, CD-ROM, DVD, and floppy. This Ppi is available to all CPU types, but is restricted for use by DXE_DRIVER, UEFI_DRIVER, and UEFI_APPLICATION module types.</HelpText>

6.11.10 PPIs.Ppi.HelpText:Lang

Table 289. PPIs.Ppi.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us"

6.12 ModuleSurfaceArea.Externs

The following is the description of the **ModuleSurfaceArea.Externs** instance:

```

<Externs>
  <Extern
    SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
    SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1}
    FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1} >
    Start Choice
      Start Sequence
        <EntryPoint> xs:NCName </EntryPoint> {0,1}
        <UnloadImage> xs:NCName </UnloadImage> {0,1}
      End Sequence
      Start Sequence
        <Constructor> xs:NCName </Constructor> {0,1}
        <Destructor> xs:NCName </Destructor> {0,1}
      End Sequence
    End Choice
    <HelpText
      Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:string
    </HelpText> {0,}
  </Extern> {1,}
</Externs>

```

Table 290. ModuleSurfaceArea.Externs

Description	This section defines additional information about drivers and libraries.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.12.1 Externs.Extern

Table 291. Externs.Extern

Description	These elements specify multiple sections of additional information.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	Multiple Instances of Extern Statements are permitted, and at least one of the following sub-elements must be specified.
Examples	N/A

6.12.2 Externs.Extern:SupArchList

Table 292. Externs.Extern:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this Extern. If this attribute is not specified, then this Extern may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this Extern.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]*) *
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

6.12.3 Externs.Extern:SupModList

Table 293. Externs.Extern:SupModList

Description	Used to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this Extern. If this attribute is not specified, then this Extern may be used with any module type. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the module types specified by this element may use this Extern.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, TOOL, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED.
Examples	SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"

6.12.4 Externs.Extern:FeatureFlag

Table 294. Externs.Extern.FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this Extern. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. This is required to be an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this Extern may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true .
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="true"

6.12.5 Externs.Extern.EntryPoint

Table 295. Externs.Extern.EntryPoint

Description	This element specifies the Module Entry Point of the Module. C name of the module entry point function. The PE32 image entry point goes into a library and the library calls this entry point in the module.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	Must be a valid C name. Valid for drivers only.
Examples	<EntryPoint> GenericMemoryTestEntryPoint </EntryPoint> <EntryPoint>BarEntry</EntryPoint>

6.12.6 Externs.Extern.UnloadImage

Table 296. Externs.Extern.UnloadImage

Description	This element specifies the Module Unload Image of the Module. C name of the module unload function. This function is optional as a module is not required to support unload.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	Must be a valid C name. Valid for drivers only.
Examples	<UnloadImage>FooUnload</UnloadImage> <UnloadImage>BarUnload</UnloadImage>

6.12.7 Externs.Extern.Constructor

Table 297. Externs.Extern.Constructor

Description	This element specifies the Constructor of a Library. While most library instances do not produce Constructors, those that do, should include the C name here. Library constructors are called before the module entry point function is executed. Any library that performs initialization (such as the Dxe SMM report status code library) should publish a constructor.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	Must be a valid C name. Valid for a Library Module
Examples	<code><Constructor>BarInit</Constructor></code> <code><Constructor>FooInit</Constructor></code>

6.12.8 Externs.Extern.Destructor

Table 298. Externs.Extern.Destructor

Description	This element specifies the Destructor of a Library. While most library instances do not produce Destructors, those that do, should include the C name here. Library destructors are called after the module entry point function is executed. Any library that performs a cleanup (such as the UEFI Runtime library) should publish a destructor.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	Must be a valid C name. Valid for a Library Module
Examples	<code><Destructor>BarKill</Destructor></code> <code><Destructor>FooKill</Destructor></code>

6.12.9 Externs.Extern.HelpText

Table 299. Externs.Extern.HelpText

Description	This element specifies the HelpText describing the module EntryPoint, UnloadImage, Constructor or Destructor.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><HelpText> GenericMemoryTestEntryPoint is the generic memory test driver's entry point, it can initialize private data to default value. </HelpText></code>

6.12.10 Externs.Extern.HelpText.Lang

Table 300. Externs.Extern.HelpText.Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us"

6.13 ModuleSurfaceArea.PcdCoded

Note that if the Binary attribute was set for the ModuleSurfaceArea, then only include the PCDs that are of type: PatchPcd, Pcd and/or PcdEx. The "DefaultValue" becomes the real value used during the build of the module in the context of a platform and must be set. The PcdItemType must be set to the way the platform used the PCD. If a binary is present, along with the sources, and the Binary attribute is NOT set, then this is a standard section, and the Pcd sections of the AsBuilt must be used to show how the binary was created.

The following is the description of the **ModuleSurfaceArea.PcdCoded** instance:


```

<PcdCoded>
  <PcdEntry
    PcdItemType=" PcdItemTypes " {1}
    PcdUsage=" xs:NCName " {1}
    SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
    SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1}
    FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1} >
      <CName> xs:NCName </CName> {1}
      <TokenSpaceGuidCName> xs:NCName </TokenSpaceGuidCName> {1}
      <DefaultValue> xs:normalizedString </DefaultValue> {0,1}
      <HelpText
        Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
          xs:string
        </HelpText> {0,}
      </PcdEntry> {1,}
    </PcdCoded>

```

Table 301. ModuleSurfaceArea.PcdCoded

Description	The list of PCDs the module was coded to use.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element - Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.13.1 PcdCoded.PcdEntry

Table 302. ModuleSurfaceArea.PcdCoded.PcdEntry

Description	Defines how the module was coded for this PCD Entry.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element - Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.13.2 PcdCoded.PcdEntry:PcdItemType

Table 303. PcdCoded.PcdEntry:PcdItemType

Description	Define the PCD type for this entry.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – PcdItemTypes
Data Constraints	Must contain one of the following Enumerated Data Types: FeaturePcd , FixedPcd , PatchPcd , Pcd or PcdEx .

Examples	<pre>PcdItemType="FixedPcd" PcdItemType="FixedPcd PatchPcd" PcdItemType="Pcd"</pre>
----------	---

Parameters

FeaturePcd

The FeaturePcd is used as a boolean flag to enable or disable specific features.

FixedPcd

The FixedPcd is used to flag the platform integrator that the module requires a static mapping of the PCD.

PatchPcd

The PatchPcd is used to flag the platform integrator that the module requires a mapping of the PCD where the value can be altered in the binary (the value needs to be a known offset,, with information about data size and type available).

Pcd

The Pcd is used to flag the platform integrator that the module may be used as a Fixed Pcd, Patch Pcd, or a Dynamic PCD - where the value is registered in a PCD database within the system and the value can be found/set using either a PCD PPI or PCD Protocol driver. The platform integrator should select how he wants to use the PCD.

PcdEx

The PcdEx is used to flag the platform integrator that the module is coded for a Dynamic PCD - where the value is registered in a PCD database within the system and the value can be found/set using either a PCD PPI or PCD Protocol driver.

6.13.3 PcdCoded.PcdEntry:PcdUsage

Table 304. PcdCoded.PcdEntry:PcdUsage

Description	This attribute specifies whether the Pcd is required or produced by the module.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	One of the enumerated values: CONSUMES , SOMETIMES_CONSUMES , PRODUCES or SOMETIMES_PRODUCES . For PcdItemTypes of FeatureFlag, this entry must be CONSUMES . UNDEFINED - implies that a PCD is used, but the package creator does not know how it used.
Examples	PcdUsage="PRODUCES" PcdUsage="CONSUMES"

Parameters

CONSUMES

This module always gets the PCD entry.

PRODUCES

The module always sets the PCD entry.

SOMETIMES_CONSUMES

The module gets the PCD entry under certain conditions or execution paths.

SOMETIMES_PRODUCES

The module sets the PCD entry under certain conditions or execution paths.

6.13.4 PcdCoded.PcdEntry:SupArchList

Table 305. PcdCoded.PcdEntry:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this PCD. If this attribute is not specified, then this PCD may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this PCD.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

6.13.5 PcdCoded.PcdEntry:SupModList

Table 306. PcdCoded.PcdEntry:SupModList

Description	Used by libraries to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this pcd. If this attribute is not specified, then this pcd may be used by any module type. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules are in a subset of the module types specified by this element may use this pcd.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType
Data Constraints	If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, TOOL, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED.
Examples	SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"

6.13.6 PcdCoded.PcdEntry:FeatureFlag

Table 307. PcdCoded.PcdEntry.FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this PCD. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. This is required to be an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this PCD may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true .
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="true"

6.13.7 PcdCoded.PcdEntry.CName

Table 308. PcdCoded.PcdEntry.CName

Description	This element specifies the C name of the PCD entry
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	A valid C name listed in a declaration file that declares the PCD.
Examples	<CName>PcdMaximumUnicodeStringLength</CName> <CName> PcdMaximumAsciiStringLength </CName>

6.13.8 PcdCoded.PcdEntry.TokenSpaceGuidCName

Table 309. PcdCoded.PcdEntry.TokenSpaceGuidCName

Description	This element specifies the C name of the PCD defined TokenSpaceGuidCName. The actual GUID value must be declared in a package declaration file that may not be part of this distribution.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	A valid C name listed in a declaration file that declares the PCD.
Examples	<TokenSpaceGuidCName> gEfiMdePkgTokenSpaceGuid </TokenSpaceGuidCName>

6.13.9 PcdCoded.PcdEntry.DefaultValue

Table 310. PcdCoded.PcdEntry.DefaultValue

Description	This element specifies the C name of the PCD defined TokenSpaceGuidCName
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	Any valid string of printable characters.
Examples	<code><DefaultValue>0x0048 0x0052</DefaultValue></code> <code><DefaultValue>LBigBear</DefaultValue></code>

6.13.10 PcdCoded.PcdEntry.HelpText

Table 311. PcdCoded.PcdEntry.HelpText

Description	This element specifies the HelpText describing how the module was coded for this PCD
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<code><HelpText> This module uses the FixedPcd: PcdDxeIplSwitchToLongMode to compute the top of the stack we were allocated, which is used to load X64 dxs core. Pre-allocate a 32 bytes which conforms to x64 calling convention. The first four parameters to a function are passed in rcx, rdx, r8 and r9. Any further parameters are pushed on the stack. Furthermore, space (4 * 8bytes) for the register parameters is reserved on the stack, in case the called function wants to spill them; this is important if the function is variadic. </HelpText></code>

6.13.11 PcdCoded.PcdEntry.HelpText:Lang

Table 312. PcdCoded.PcdEntry.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	<code>Lang="en-us"</code>

6.14 ModuleSurfaceArea.PeiDepex

The following is the description of the **ModuleSurfaceArea.PeiDepex** instance:

```

<PeiDepex
  SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
  SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1}
  FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1}>
  <Expression> xs:string </Expression> {1}
  <HelpText
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:normalizedString
  </HelpText> {0,1}
</PeiDepex>

```

Table 313. ModuleSurfaceArea.PeiDepex

Description	This describes the PEIM dependency expression.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.14.1 PeiDepex:SupArchList

Table 314. PeiDepex:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this dependency expression. If this attribute is not specified, then this dependency expression may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this dependency expression.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute - ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

6.14.2 PeiDepex:SupModList

Table 315. PeiDepex:ModArchList

Description	Used by libraries to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this dependency expression. If this attribute is not specified, then this dependency expression may be used by any module type. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules are in a subset of the module types specified by this element may use this dependency expression.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute - ModuleListType

Data Constraints	<p>If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, TOOL, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED.</p>
Examples	<pre>SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"</pre>

6.14.3 PeiDepex:FeatureFlag

Table 316. PeiDepex:FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this dependency expression. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. This is an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted. If only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this dependency expression may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute - xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="true"

6.14.4 PeiDepex.Expression

Table 317. PeiDepex.Expression

Description	This is a string contains valid dependency expression, processed left to right. Tools may use this data to create a PEI Depex section. The GUID value associated with the C name can be found by searching the GUID declarations in the package surface area.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	A single line that will be used to generate a PEI dependency section.
Examples	gEfiPeiMemoryDiscoveredPpiGuid OR gEfiTemporaryRamSupportPpiGuid

6.14.4.1 PEIM Dependency Expression Grammar

The expression must conform to the following grammar.

Note: Future releases of PI specification may take precedence over this grammar):

```

<PeiDepex> ::= | <bool>

<bool>      ::= <bool> AND <term>
              | <bool> OR <term>
              | <term>
<term>      ::= NOT <factor>
              | <factor>
<factor>    ::= <bool>
              | TRUE
              | FALSE
              | <GUID>
              | END

<GUID>      ::= {<RegistryFormatGuid>} {<GuidCName>}

```

6.14.5 PeiDepex.HelpText

Table 318. PeiDepex.HelpText

Description	This is a string contains valid dependency expression, processed left to right. Tools may use this data to create a PEI Depex section.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	A single line that will be used to generate a PEI dependency section.
Examples	gEfiPeiMemoryDiscoveredPpiGuid OR gEfiTemporaryRamSupportPpiGuid

6.14.6 PeiDepex.HelpText:Lang

Table 319. PeiDepex.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us"

6.15 Module SurfaceArea.DxeDepex

The following is the description of the **ModuleSurfaceArea.DxeDepex** instance:

```

<DxeDepex
  SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
  SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1}
  FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1}>
  <Expression> xs:string </Expression> {1}
  <HelpText
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:normalizedString
  </HelpText> {0,1}
</DxeDepex>

```

Table 320. ModuleSurfaceArea.DxeDepex

Description	This describes the DXE driver dependency expression.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.15.1 DxeDepex:SupArchList

Table 321. DxeDepex:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this dependency.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z] [a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

6.15.2 DxeDepex:SupModList

Table 322. DxeDepex:SupModList

Description	Used by libraries to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this dependency expression. If this attribute is not specified, then this dependency expression may be used by any module type. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules are in a subset of the module types specified by this element may use this dependency expression.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – ModuleListType

Data Constraints	<p>If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, TOOL, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED.</p>
Examples	<pre>SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"</pre>

6.15.3 DxeDepex:FeatureFlag

Table 323. DxeDepex:FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this dependency expression. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. This is an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this dependency expression may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="true"

6.15.4 DxeDepex.Expression

Table 324. DxeDepex.Expression

Description	This is a string contains valid dependency expression, processed left to right. Tools may use this data to create a Dxe Depex section. The GUID value associated with the C name can be found by searching the GUID declarations in the package surface area.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	A single line that will be appended to a flag line for the tool code entered.
Examples	gEfiFirmwareVolumeBlockProtocolGuid AND gEfiAlternateFvBlockGuid AND gEfiFaultTolerantWriteLiteProtocolGuid

6.15.4.1 DXE Dependency Expression Grammar

The Expression must conform to the following grammar (note that future releases of *PI Specification* may take precedence over this grammar):

```

<DxeDepex> ::= BEFORE <guid>
             | AFTER <guid>
             | SOR <bool>
             | <bool>
<bool>      ::= <bool> AND <term>
             | <bool> OR <term>
             | <term>
<term>     ::= NOT <factor>
             | <factor>
<factor>   ::= <bool>
             | TRUE
             | FALSE
             | GUID
             | END
<guid>     ::= {<RegistryFormatGuid>} {<GuidCName>}

```

6.15.5 DxeDepex.HelpText

Table 325. DxeDepex.HelpText

Description	This element specifies the HelpText describing why this DXE depex is required for the module.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<HelpText> This module required the following. </HelpText>

6.15.6 DxeDepex.HelpText:Lang

Table 326. DxeDepex.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us"

6.16 Module SurfaceArea.SmmDepex

The following is the description of the **ModuleSurfaceArea.SmmDepex** instance:

```

<SmmDepex
  SupArchList=" ArchListType " {0,1}
  SupModList=" ModuleListType " {0,1}
  FeatureFlag=" xs:normalizedString " {0,1}>
  <Expression> xs:string </Expression> {1}
  <HelpText
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
    xs:normalizedString
  </HelpText> {0,1}
</SmmDepex>

```

Table 327. ModuleSurfaceArea.SmmDepex

Description	This describes the SMM (DXE) driver dependency expression.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

6.16.1 SmmDepex:SupArchList

Table 328. SmmDepex:SupArchList

Description	Used to restrict the set of CPU Architectures that are allowed to use this dependency expression. If this attribute is not specified, then this dependency expression may be used with any CPU Architecture. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules that support a subset of the CPU architectures specified by this element may use this dependency expression.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute - ArchListType
Data Constraints	[A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]* (" " [A-Z][a-zA-Z0-9]*)*
Examples	SupArchList="IA32" SupArchList="IA32 X64" SupArchList="EBC IPF X64"

6.16.2 SmmDepex:SupModList

Table 329. SmmDepex:SupModList

Description	Used by libraries to restrict the set of module types that are allowed to use this dependency expression. If this attribute is not specified, then this dependency expression may be used by any module type. If this attribute is specified, then only those modules are in a subset of the module types specified by this element may use this dependency expression.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute - ModuleListType

Data Constraints	<p>If specified, must contain one or more of the supported module types separated by spaces. The supported module types include BASE, SEC, PEI_CORE, PEIM, DXE_CORE, DXE_DRIVER, DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER, DXE_SAL_DRIVER, DXE_SMM_DRIVER, TOOL, UEFI_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_APPLICATION, USER_DEFINED.</p>
Examples	<pre>SupModList="BASE" SupModList="PEIM DXE_DRIVER" SupModList="UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION DXE_DRIVER"</pre>

6.16.3 SmmDepex:FeatureFlag

Table 330. SmmDepex:FeatureFlag

Description	Used to restrict the use of this dependency expression. This attribute is a Boolean expression containing PCD Feature Flag names and operators. This is an in-fix logical expression, evaluated left to right, for a range of values, using Relational, Equality and Logical Operators (NOT, OR, AND, LT, LE, EQ, GT, GE and XOR) that must evaluate to either True or False. The forms PcdCName and/or PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName.PcdCName are permitted; if only the PcdCName is specified, then the PcdTokenSpaceGuidCName is the same as this PCD's TokenSpaceGuidCName. Parentheses are recommended for clarity. If this attribute is specified, then this dependency expression may only be used if the Boolean expression evaluates to true.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute - xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	PCD C names, true, false and/or Operators : NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQ, LT, LE, GT and GE.
Examples	FeatureFlag="true"

6.16.4 SmmDepex.Expression

Table 331. SmmDepex.Expression

Description	This is a string contains valid dependency expression, processed left to right. Tools may use this data to create a SMM (Dxe) Depex section. The GUID value associated with the C name can be found by searching the GUID declarations in the package surface area.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	A single line that will be appended to a flag line for the tool code entered.
Examples	gEfiFirmwareVolumeBlockProtocolGuid AND gEfiAlternateFvBlockGuid AND gEfiFaultTolerantWriteLiteProtocolGuid

6.16.4.1 SMM Dependency Expression Grammar

The Expression must conform to the following grammar.

Note: Future releases of PI specification may take precedence over this grammar):

```

<SmmDepex> ::= BEFORE <guid>
              | AFTER <guid>
              | SOR <bool>
              | <bool>
<bool>      ::= <bool> AND <term>
              | <bool> OR <term>
              | <term>
<term>     ::= NOT <factor>
              | <factor>
<factor>   ::= <bool>
              | TRUE
              | FALSE
              | GUID
              | END
<guid>    ::= {<RegistryFormatGuid>} {<GuidCName>}

```

6.16.5 SmmDepex.HelpText

Table 332. SmmDepex.HelpText

Description	This element specifies the HelpText describing why this SMM depex is required for the module.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<HelpText> This module required the following. </HelpText>

6.16.6 SmmDepex.HelpText:Lang

Table 333. SmmDepex.HelpText:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	Lang="en-us"

6.17 ModuleSurfaceArea.MiscellaneousFiles

The following is the description of the **ModuleSurfaceArea.MiscellaneousFiles**

Distribution Packaging Specification

instance:

```

<MiscellaneousFiles>
  <Description
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1}
    xs:string
  </Description> {0,}
  <Filename
    Executable=" xs:boolean " {0,1}
    xs:anyURI
  </Filename> {1,}
</MiscellaneousFiles>

```

Table 334. ModuleSurfaceArea.MiscellaneousFiles

Description	This element contains any module specific miscellaneous files not defined previously.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	Free-form text or any well formed XML element(s.)
Examples	N/A

6.17.1 MiscellaneousFiles.Description

Table 335. MiscellaneousFiles.Description

Description	Any information that might be appropriate for files listed in this section.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<Description> Readme.txt is a quick start guide for using this module. </Description>

6.17.2 MiscellaneousFiles. Description:Lang

Table 336. MiscellaneousFiles. Description:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	Lang="en-us"

6.17.3 MiscellaneousFiles.Filename

Table 337. MiscellaneousFiles.FileName

Description	A file that is included in the distribution package that does not pertain to any of the previously defined sections.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:anyURI
Data Constraints	The path and filename of the file, relative to the Module’s “root” directory (as specified in theDistribution Content File.)
Examples	<code><File>FooBarMfgBuildReadMe.txt</File></code> <code><File> Specs/FooBar_Rules.pdf </File></code>

6.17.4 Misc.FileName:Executable

Table 338. Misc.FileName:Executable

Description	This flag is used during installation to ensure that the file is executable.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:boolean
Data Constraints	“true” or “false” (default)
Examples	<code>Executable="true"</code>

6.18 ModuleSurfaceArea.UserExtensions

The following is the description of the `ModuleSurfaceArea.UserExtensions` instance:

```

<UserExtensions
  UserId=" xs:NCName " {1}
  Identifier=" xs:string " {1}
  AnyAttribute {0,} >
  Mixed Content, any user defined elements are also permitted.
  Any Text or XML Format
</UserExtensions>

```

Table 339. ModuleSurfaceArea.UserExtensions

Description	This section is used for any processing instructions that may be custom to the content provided by the distribution that are common to module. The content is vendor specific. The content can be plain text as well as any user-defined, properly formatted XML structure
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	None
Examples	N/A

6.18.1 UserExtensions:UserId

Table 340. UserExtensions:UserId

Description	The normative reference name to identify the originator of this information.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	A string that starts with a letter followed by any combination of letters, digits, underscores, and periods. No whitespace characters are allowed.
Examples	Name="NoSuchCorp" Name="FooBarMfg"

6.18.2 UserExtensions:Identifier

Table 341. UserExtensions:Identifier

Description	The string reference identify this information.
Required	YES
Data Type	Attribute– xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	A string that starts with a number or a letter followed by any combination of letters, digits, underscores, dashes and periods. Whitespace characters are allowed.
Examples	Name="Special Build Rules 1" Name="f6665cf5-8290-4b02-ba0c-5cb5a9542176"

Tools Surface Area Description

This section is used for distributing various documentation, configuration templates and tools.

The XML Instance Representation for **DistributionPackage.Tools** is as follows:

```
<Tools>
  <Header> ... </Header> {0,1}
  <Filename> ... </Filename> {1,}
</Tools>
```

Table 342. DistributionPackage.Tools

Description	This element contains all the information associated with a Tools Surface Area Description
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	The Header element is required. All other elements are optional.
Examples	N/A

7.1 Tools.Header

The following is the description of the **Tools.Header** instance:

```
<Header>
  <Name> xs:normalizedString </Name> {1}
  <Copyright> xs:string </Copyright> {0,1}
  <License> xs:string </License> {0,1}
  <Abstract>
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:normalizedString </Abstract> {0,}
  <Description
    Lang=" xs:language " {0,1} >
      xs:string </Description> {0,}
</Header>
```

Table 343. Tools.Header

Description	This element contains the header information for a Tools Surface Area Description. This includes the name of the tools package, descriptions of the tools package, copyright and licensing information associated with the tools package, and the version of XML Schema to which this file conforms.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

7.1.1 Header.Name

Table 344. Header.Name

Description	The User Interface Name for the Tools package.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	String value of one or more characters.
Examples	<Name>BaseTools Package, Version 2.0</Name> <Name>AntTools Package, Version 1.2</Name>

7.1.2 Header.Copyright

Table 345. Header.Copyright

Description	The copyright for this tools package if it is different than the copyright of the distribution package. The copyright is generated by the creator of a package. If a derivative work is generated from an existing package, then the existing copyright must be maintained, and additional copyrights may be appended to the end of this element.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A set of one or more copyright statements on one or more lines of text.
Examples	<Copyright> Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights reserved. </Copyright>

7.1.3 Header.License

Table 346. Header.License

Description	A license that describes any restrictions on the use of this tools package. If a derivative work is allowed by the original license and a derivative work is generated from an existing package, then the existing license must be maintained, and additional licenses may be appended to the end of this element.
-------------	--

Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<pre> <License> This program and the accompanying materials are licensed and made available under the terms and conditions of the BSD License which accompanies this distribution. The full text of the license may be found at http://opensource.org/licenses/bsd-license.php THE PROGRAM IS DISTRIBUTED UNDER THE BSD LICENSE ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. </License> </pre>

7.1.4 Header.Abstract

Table 347. Header.Abstract

Description	A one line description of the tools.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	String value of one or more characters.
Examples	<pre> <Abstract> Win32 Binaries and template files for Makefile Base Build system </Abstract> </pre>

7.1.4.1 Header.Abstract:Lang

Table 348. Header.Abstract:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	<pre> Lang="en-us" Lang="fra" </pre>

7.1.5 Header.Description

Table 349. Header.Description

Description	A complete description of a tools package. This description should include the release name of the package, the version of the package, and a complete description of the package contents and/or features including a description of the updates since the previous package release.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<pre><Description> BaseTools package using Makefile based builds. The binaries provided are Win32 executables, which can execute on both IA32 and X64 based operating systems. UNIX based operating systems will need to compile the C tools which are POSIX compliant. Python tools may be compiled to executable format, or run under the Python interpreter. </Description></pre>

7.1.5.1 Header.Description:Lang

Table 350. Header.Description:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	<pre>Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"</pre>

7.2 Tools.Filename

This section is used for distributing both source and binary files for tools. If the Exec bit is not set, then the file is either a source file, a configuration file, or written documentation.

The following is the description of the **Tools.Filename** instance:

```

<Filename
  OS=" SupportedOs " {0,1}
  Executable=" xs:boolean " {0,1} >
  xs:anyURI
</Filename> {1,}

```

Table 351. Tools.Filename

Description	Any description, executable, template or configuration file that make up the infrastructure and build system.
Required	YES
Data Type	Element – xs:anyURI
Data Constraints	The path and filename of the file as it appears in the Distribution Content FileFile.
Examples	<pre> <Filename Root="true">BuildNotes2.txt</Filename> <Filename>Conf/tools_def.template</Filename> <Filename Root="true">edksetup.bat</Filename> <Filename Revision="937">Bin/Win32/build.exe</ Filename> </pre>

7.2.1 Filename:OS

Table 352. Filename:OS

Description	Used to identify a specific operating system this tool is targeted for. This is informational only.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:NCName
Data Constraints	Enumeration: Win32 , Win64 , Linux32 , Linux64 , OS/X32 , OS/X64 , GenericWin , GenericNix or any single word identifier.
Examples	OS="Win32"

7.2.2 Filename:Executable

Table 353. Filename:Executable

Description	This flag is used during installation to ensure that the file is executable.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:boolean
Data Constraints	"true" or "false" (default – not present)
Examples	Executable="true"

MiscellaneousFiles Section

This section describes the miscellaneous files section of the Distribution Description. These sections are used to list files that do not fall into previous categories. The distribution package provider must provide information as to how this information will be used.

The XML Instance Representation for **DistributionPackage.MiscellaneousFiles** is as follows:

```
<MiscellaneousFiles
  <Header> ... </Header> {0,1}
  <Filename> ... </Filename> {0,}
</MiscellaneousFiles>
```

Table 354. DistributionPackage.MiscellaneousFiles

Description	This element contains any miscellaneous distribution information and/or files not defined previously. Processing of this section is specified as “lax”.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	Free-form text or any well formed XML element(s.)
Examples	N/A

8.1 MiscellaneousFiles.Header

The following is the description of the **MiscellaneousFiles.Header** instance:

```
<Header>
  <Name> xs:normalizedString </Name> {0,1}
  <Copyright> xs:string </Copyright> {0,1}
  <License> xs:string </License> {0,1}
  <Abstract> xs:normalizedString </Abstract> {0,1}
  <Description> xs:string </Description> {0,1}
</Header>
```

Table 355. MiscellaneousFiles.Header

Description	This element contains the header information for a Misc Section.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex
Data Constraints	N/A
Examples	N/A

8.1.1 Header.Name

Table 356. Header.Name

Description	The User Interface Name for the Miscellaneous content.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	String value of one or more characters.
Examples	<pre><Name>BaseTools Package, Version 2.0</Name> <Name>AntTools Package, Version 1.2</Name></pre>

8.1.2 Header.Copyright

Table 357. Header.Copyright

Description	The copyright for this miscellaneous content if it is different than the copyright of the distribution package. The copyright is generated by the creator of the content. If a derivative work is generated from an existing work, then the existing copyright must be maintained, and additional copyrights may be appended to the end of this element.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A set of one or more copyright statements on one or more lines of text.
Examples	<pre><Copyright> Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights reserved. </Copyright></pre>

8.1.3 Header.License

Table 358. Header.License

Description	A license that describes any restrictions on the use of this content. If a derivative work is allowed by the original license and a derivative work is generated from an existing package, then the existing license must be maintained, and additional licenses may be appended to the end of this element.
-------------	--

Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<pre> <License> This program and the accompanying materials are licensed and made available under the terms and conditions of the BSD License which accompanies this distribution. The full text of the license may be found at http://opensource.org/licenses/bsd-license.php THE PROGRAM IS DISTRIBUTED UNDER THE BSD LICENSE ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. </License> </pre>

8.1.4 Header.Abstract

Table 359. Header.Abstract

Description	A brief text description of the content.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:normalizedString
Data Constraints	A string that contains two or more words.
Examples	<Abstract> Applicable Specifications </Abstract>

8.1.4.1 Header.Abstract:Lang

Table 360. Header.Abstract:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is "en-us."
Examples	<pre> Lang="en-us" Lang="fra" </pre>

8.1.5 Header.Description

Table 361. Header.Description

Description	A complete description of the content.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:string
Data Constraints	A string that contains one or more lines of text.
Examples	<Description> Specification PDF documents ACPI WG. Dated 2004. </Description>

8.1.5.1 Header.Description:Lang

Table 362. Header.Description:Lang

Description	The language code uses an RFC 1766 language code identifier
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:language
Data Constraints	If present, the language code must use an RFC 1766 language code identifier. If not specified, the default is “en-us.”
Examples	Lang="en-us" Lang="fra"

8.2 MiscellaneousFiles.FileName

The following is the description of the **MiscellaneousFiles.FileName** instance:

```

<Filename
  Executable=" xs:boolean " {0,1} >
  xs:anyURI
</Filename>

```

Table 363. MiscellaneousFiles.Filename

Description	A file that is included in the distribution package that does not pertain to any of the previously defined sections.
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – xs:anyURI
Data Constraints	The path and filename of the file as it appears in the Distribution Content File.
Examples	<File>FooBarMfgBuildReadMe.txt</File>

8.2.1 Filename:Executable

Table 364. Filename:Executable

Description	This flag is used during installation to ensure that the file is executable.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute – xs:boolean
Data Constraints	“ true ” or “ false ” (default)
Examples	Executable="true"

UserExtensions

This section describes the UserExtensions section of the Distribution Description File. These sections are used to describe any extensions to this specification. The distribution package provider must provide information as to how this information will be used.

The following is a description of the **DistributionPackage.UserExtensions** instance:

```

<UserExtensions
  UserId=" xs:NCName " {1} >
  Identifier=" xs:string " {0,1}
  AnyAttribute {0,} >
    mixed="true"
    Any Content is permitted
</UserExtensions>

```

Table 365. DistributionPackage.UserExtensions

Description	This element contains any miscellaneous distribution information not defined previously. Processing of this section is specified as "lax".
Required	NO
Data Type	Element – Complex, mixed=true
Data Constraints	None
Examples	N/A

9.1 UserExtensions:UserId

Table 366. UserExtensions:UserId

Description	The normative reference name to identify the originator of this information.
Required	Yes
Data Type	Attribute– xs:NCName
Data Constraints	A single word identifier for grouping similar content.
Examples	UserId="NoSuchCorp"

9.2 UserExtensions:Identifier

Table 367. UserExtensions:Identifier

Description	A single string that can be used to sub-divide content of a group of items.
Required	NO
Data Type	Attribute– xs:string
Data Constraints	A string identifier for sub-grouping content.
Examples	Identifier="PRE_BUILD" Identifier="f6665cf5-8290-4b02-ba0c-5cb5a9542176"

Appendix A

XML Examples

This section contains several XML examples. These examples are either portions of a distribution package or simple examples of a distribution package containing a single component. Typical use cases will likely be more complex than shown in this appendix because distribution packages will likely contain several components of each type. The following XML examples are included in this section:

- Distribution Package Header
- Package Header
- Distribution Package containing source to a UEFI Application
- Distribution Package containing binary for a UEFI Drivers
- Distribution Package containing source for a Library
- Distribution Package containing source for a PI PEIM
- Distribution Package containing source for a DXE Driver
- Distribution Package containing a binary of a Tool

A.1 Distribution Package Header

The following example is the header from a distribution package for chipset related content. This distribution package is read-only and consumers of this package are not allowed to repackage this content into another package. This distribution package is from Nosuch Corporation, and contains the base data types and libraries for implementing chipset modules for Si products produced by Nosuch Corporation. The version of the release is 1.2 and it was created on 3/24/2008 at 09:30. It is covered by a BSD license and the Nosuch Corporation owns the copyright for the content.

```

<DistributionHeader ReadOnly="true" RePackage="false">
  <Name BaseName="NosuchChipset">Nosuch Chipset</Name>
  <GUID Version="1.2"> AF0DDA2E-EA83-480b-B2CE-FC0BB2F894C2 </
GUID>
  <Vendor> Nosuch Corporation </Vendor>
  <Date>2008-03-24T09:30:00</Date>
  <Copyright>Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights
reserved.</Copyright>
  <License>
    This program and the accompanying materials are licensed and
made available under
    the terms and conditions of the BSD License which accompanies
this distribution.
    The full text of the license may be found at:
    http://opensource.org/licenses/bsd-license.php
    THE PROGRAM IS DISTRIBUTED UNDER THE BSD LICENSE ON AN "AS
IS" BASIS, WITHOUT
    WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR
IMPLIED.
  </License>
  <Abstract> Version 1.2 of the NoSuchChipset Distribution
Package. </Abstract>
  <Description>
    Initial release of the NoSuchChipset, Version 1.0 providing
the base data types
    and libraries for NoSuch UEFI Driver. This includes special
libraries for
    reporting status codes of the driver.
  </Description>
  <Signature> 09fa8fc7222da9afd9ffd52ba8b73f45 </Signature>
  <XmlSpecification> 1.0 </XmlSpecification>
</DistributionHeader>

```

A.2 Package Header

The following example is the package surface area for the UEFI or PI Packages that provide the base types and definitions from the *UEFI 2.2 Specification* and *PI 1.2 Specification*. It is implemented by Nosuch Corporation, covered by a copyright from Nosuch Corporation, and licensed under BSD. This abbreviated example shows the public include files **Uefi.h**, **PiPeim.h**, and **PiDxe.h** along with the GuidValue for EFI global variables, the Protocol GUID for the EFI Block I/O Protocol that is only available to a subset of the DXE and UEFI module types, and a token space GUID for Platform Configuration Database (PCD) tokens defined by Nosuch Corporation. It also declares an I/O Port Library class and a PCD that are not related to the UEFI or PI Specification content, but are listed here because they are referenced by additional examples later in this section.


```

<PackageSurfaceArea>
  <Header>
    <Name BaseName="UefiPiPkg"> UEFI/PI Package </Name>
    <GUID Version="1.0"> 26E136A4-1060-48fb-AEB6-3DB66C175CFB </
GUID>
    <Copyright>
      Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights
reserved.
    </Copyright>
    <License>
      This program and the accompanying materials are licensed
and made available
      under the terms and conditions of the BSD License which
accompanies this
      distribution. The full text of the license may be found
at:
      http://opensource.org/licenses/bsd-license.php
      THE PROGRAM IS DISTRIBUTED UNDER THE BSD LICENSE ON AN "AS
IS" BASIS, WITHOUT
      WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS
OR IMPLIED.
    </License>
    <Abstract> Version 1.0 of the UEFI/PI Package. </Abstract>
    <Description>
      Provides the base data types and definitions from the UEFI
2.2 Specification
      and the PI 1.2 Specification
    </Description>
    <PackagePath> UefiPiPkg </PackagePath>
  </Header>
  <LibraryClassDeclarations>
    <LibraryClass Keyword="IoPortLib">
      <HeaderFile> Include/Library/IoPortLib.h </HeaderFile>
    </LibraryClass>
  </LibraryClassDeclarations>
  <PackageIncludes>
    <PackageHeader>
      <HeaderFile> Include/Uefi.h </HeaderFile>
    </PackageHeader>
    <PackageHeader>
      <HeaderFile> Include/PiPeim.h </HeaderFile>
    </PackageHeader>
    <PackageHeader>
      <HeaderFile> Include/PiDxe.h </HeaderFile>
    </PackageHeader>
  </PackageIncludes>
  <GuidDeclarations>

```

```

    <Entry UiName="EFI Global Variable GUID"
  GuidTypes="Variable">
    <CName> gEfiGlobalVariableGuid </CName>
    <GuidValue> 8BE4DF61-93CA-11D2-AA0D-00E098032B8C </
  GuidValue>
  </Entry>
    <Entry UiName="Toke Space GUID for Nosuch Corp PCDs"
  GuidTypes="TokenSpaceGuid">
    <CName> gNosuchCorpTokenSpaceGuid </CName>
    <GuidValue> 5702D1FD-AD66-4c14-980F-DF9F34113B81 </
  GuidValue>
  </Entry>
</GuidDeclarations>
<ProtocolDeclarations>
  <Entry UiName="Block I/O Protocol" SupModuleList="DXE_DRIVER
  DXE_RUNTIME_DRIVER UEFI_DRIVER UEFI_APPLICATION">
    <CName> gEfiBlockIoProtocolGuid </CName>
    <GuidValue> 964E5B21-6459-11D2-8E39-00A0C969723B </
  GuidValue>
    <HelpText>
      The Block I/O Protocol provides services to read, write,
      and flush block to a
      block oriented storage device such as a hard disk, CD-
      ROM, DVD, and floppy.
      This Protocol is available to all CPU types, but is
      restricted for use by
      DXE_DRIVER, UEFI_RUNTIME_DRIVER, UEFI_DRIVER, and
      UEFI_APPLICATION module
      types.
    </HelpText>
  </Entry>
</ProtocolDeclarations>
  <PcdDeclarations>
    <PcdEntry>
      <TokenSpaceGuidCName> gNosuchCorpTokenSpaceGuid </
  TokenSpaceGuidCName>
      <Token> 00000001 </Token>
      <CName> SmBusHostControllerIoPortBaseAddress </CName>
      <DatumType> UINT32 </DatumType> {1}
      <ValidUsage> FixedPcd PatchPcd Pcd PcdEx </ValidUsage>
      <DefaultValue> 0x500 </DefaultValue>
    </PcdEntry>
  </PcdDeclarations>
</PackageSurfaceArea>

```

A.3 UEFI Application

The following example is the distribution package that contains a package, and that package contains the source code to a module that is an EFI Application that displays the message “Hello World” on the console output devices. All of the material in this distribution package are implemented by Nosuch Corporation, covered by a copyright from Nosuch Corporation, and licensed under BSD. The EFI application depends on the UefiPkg described in Section A.2 so the application can use `Uefi.h` that contains the base types and definitions from the *UEFI 2.2 Specification*.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<DistributionPackage xmlns="http://www.uefi.org/2012/1.0"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" >
  <DistributionHeader ReadOnly="true" RePackage="false">
    <Name BaseName="HelloWorldDistribution">Hello World
Distribution</Name>
    <GUID Version="1.0"> 62D1DDD0-FC9C-4809-BE6D-DFB8B463B1D6 </
GUID>
    <Vendor> Nosuch Corporation </Vendor>
    <Date>2008-03-24T09:30:00</Date>
    <Copyright>
      Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights
reserved.
    </Copyright>
    <Abstract> Version 1.0 of the Hello World Distribution
Package. </Abstract>
    <XmlSpecification> 1.0 </XmlSpecification>
  </DistributionHeader>
  <PackageSurfaceArea>
    <Header>
      <Name BaseName="HelloWorldPkg"> Hello World Package </Name>
      <GUID Version="1.0"> 0410A3C9-6875-4010-8EC1-0BC1FD96D9AC
</GUID>
      <Copyright>
        Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights
reserved.
      </Copyright>
      <Abstract> Version 1.0 of the Hello World Package. </
Abstract>
      <PackagePath> HelloWorldPkg </PackagePath>
    </Header>
    <ModuleSurfaceArea BinaryModule="false">
      <Header>
        <Name BaseName="HelloWorld"> Hello World </Name>
        <GUID Version="1.0"> 179F65BD-0092-455b-81A5-09B1CD27EA33
</GUID>
        <Copyright>
          Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights
reserved.
        </Copyright>
        <Abstract> Hello World UEFI Application </Abstract>
        <Description>
          Displays the message 'Hello World' on all UEFI console
output devices
        </Description>
      </Header>
      <ModuleProperties>

```

```

        <ModuleType> UEFI_APPLICATION </ModuleType>
        <Path> HelloWorld </Path>
        <UefiSpecificationVersion> 2.0 </
UefiSpecificationVersion>
        </ModuleProperties>
        <SourceFiles>
            <Filename> HelloWorld.c </Filename>
        </SourceFiles>
        <PackageDependencies>
            <Package>
                <GUID Version="1.0"> 26E136A4-1060-48fb-AEB6-
3DB66C175CFB</GUID>
            </Package>
        </PackageDependencies>
        <Externs>
            <Extern>
                <EntryPoint> InitializeHelloWorld </EntryPoint>
            </Extern>
        </Externs>
    </ModuleSurfaceArea>
</PackageSurfaceArea>
</DistributionPackage>

```

A.4 UEFI Application Source Files

```

#include <Uefi.h>

EFI_STATUS
EFIAPI
InitializeHelloWorld (
    IN EFI_HANDLE      ImageHandle,
    IN EFI_SYSTEM_TABLE *SystemTable
)
{
    SystemTable->ConOut->OutputString (SystemTable->ConOut,
L"Hello World\n");
    return EFI_SUCCESS;
}

```

A.5 UEFI Driver

This examples contains the Module Surface Area for a UEFI Driver binary for a PCI graphics controller from Nosuch Corporation. Binary images for IA32, X64, IPF, and EBC are included. The driver follows the UEFI Driver Model and produces the EFI Driver Bindng Protocol. This driver uses the services of the EFI PCI I/O Protocol to produce the Graphics Ouput Protocol services.

```

    <ModuleSurfaceArea BinaryModule="true">
      <Header>
        <Name BaseName="NosuchUefiGop"> Nosuch UEFI GOP Driver </
Name>
        <GUID Version="1.0"> F32C4FAC-F5E9-4cdc-B8C9-48AC276CB87F
</GUID>
        <Copyright>
          Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights
reserved.
        </Copyright>
        <Abstract> UEFI Graphics Output Protocol driver </
Abstract>
        <Description>
          Produces the Graphics Output Protocol for PCI graphics
controllers from
          Nosuch Corporation
        </Description>
      </Header>
      <ModuleProperties>
        <ModuleType> UEFI_DRIVER </ModuleType>
        <Path> NosuchUefiGop </Path>
        <UefiSpecificationVersion> 2.0 </
UefiSpecificationVersion>
      </ModuleProperties>
      <BinaryFiles>
        <BinaryFile>
          <Filename FileType="PE32" SupArchList="IA32">
            Ia32/NosuchUefiGop.efi
          </Filename>
          <Filename FileType="PE32" SupArchList="X64">
            X64/NosuchUefiGop.efi
          </Filename>
          <Filename FileType="PE32" SupArchList="IPF">
            Ipf/NosuchUefiGop.efi
          </Filename>
          <Filename FileType="PE32" SupArchList="EBC">
            Ebc/NosuchUefiGop.efi
          </Filename>
        </BinaryFile>
      </BinaryFiles>
      <Protocols>
        <Protocol Usage="PRODUCES">
          <CName> gEfiDriverBindingProtocolGuid </CName>
        </Protocol>
        <Protocol Usage="TO_START">
          <CName> gEfiPciIoProtocolGuid </CName>
        </Protocol>

```

```
<Protocol Usage="BY_START">
  <CName> gEfiGraphicsOutputProtocolGuid </CName>
</Protocol>
</Protocols>
</ModuleSurfaceArea>
```

A.6 Library

This example contains the Module Surface Area for the source code to a library from Nosuch Corporation that produces the a set APIs to access I/O ports on IA32 and X64 platforms. On IA32 and X64 platforms, this is implemented using IN and OUT instructions. In this implementation assembly code is required to perform IN and OUT instructions. Both the MSFT and GCC versions of the ASM code for both IA32 and X64 are provided so this library can be built using a number of different tool chains.

```

    <ModuleSurfaceArea BinaryModule="false">
      <Header>
        <Name BaseName="IoPortLib">
          I/O Port Library
        </Name>
        <GUID Version="1.0"> E9491CAD-9457-4fac-A856-87EC9DB60A23
</GUID>
        <Copyright>
          Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights
reserved.
        </Copyright>
        <Abstract>
          This library provides APIs to access I/O ports on IA32
and X64 platforms.
        </Abstract>
      </Header>
      <ModuleProperties SupArchList="IA32 X64">
        <ModuleType> BASE </ModuleType>
        <Path> IoPortLib </Path>
      </ModuleProperties>
      <LibraryClassDefinitions>
        <LibraryClass Usage="PRODUCES" >
          <Keyword> IoPortLib </Keyword>
        </LibraryClass>
      </LibraryClassDefinitions>
      <SourceFiles>
        <Filename> IoPortLib.c </Filename>
        <Filename Family="MSFT" SupArchList="IA32"> Ia32/
InOut.asm </Filename>
        <Filename Family="MSFT" SupArchList="X64"> X64/InOut.asm
</Filename>
        <Filename Family="GCC" SupArchList="IA32"> Ia32/InOut.S
</Filename>
        <Filename Family="GCC" SupArchList="X64"> X64/InOut.S </
Filename>
      </SourceFiles>
      <PackageDependencies>
        <Package>
          <GUID Version="1.0"> 26E136A4-1060-48fb-AEB6-
3DB66C175CFB</GUID>
        </Package>
      </PackageDependencies>
      <PPIs>
        <Ppi Usage="PRODUCES">
          <CName> gEfiPciCfg2PpiGuid </CName>
        </Ppi>
      </PPIs>

```



```
<Externs>
  <Extern>
    <EntryPoint> PeimInitializePciCfg2 </EntryPoint>
  </Extern>
</Externs>
</ModuleSurfaceArea>
```

A.7 PI PEIM

This examples contains the Module Surface Area for the sources to a PEIM that is implemented by Nosuch Corporation and produces the PEI CFG2 PPI using the 0xCF8 and 0xCFC I/O ports to generate PCI configuration cycles. The dependency expression for this PEIM is TRUE. This PEIM uses an I/O Port Library to access the 0xCF8 and 0xCFC I/O ports, and has a module entry point called `PeimInitializePciCfg2`.

```

    <ModuleSurfaceArea BinaryModule="false">
      <Header>
        <Name BaseName="PciCfg2Pei">
          PCI Configuration2 PEIM
        </Name>
        <GUID Version="1.0"> EA3AA39C-2AC1-44ef-8D2D-D57E34C9FD4C
      </GUID>
      <Copyright>
        Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights
reserved.
      </Copyright>
      <Abstract>
        Produces the PCI CFG2 PPI using I/O ports 0xCF8 and
0xCFC to perform
        PCI configuration cycles.
      </Abstract>
    </Header>
    <ModuleProperties>
      <ModuleType> PEIM </ModuleType>
      <Path> PciCfg2Pei </Path>
      <PiSpecificationVersion> 1.0 </PiSpecificationVersion>
    </ModuleProperties>
    <LibraryClassDefinitions>
      <LibraryClass Usage="CONSUMES" >
        <Keyword> IoPortLib </Keyword>
      </LibraryClass>
    </LibraryClassDefinitions>
    <SourceFiles>
      <Filename> PciCfg2.c </Filename>
    </SourceFiles>
    <PackageDependencies>
      <Package>
        <GUID Version="1.0"> 26E136A4-1060-48fb-AEB6-
3DB66C175CFB</GUID>
      </Package>
    </PackageDependencies>
    <PPIs>
      <Ppi Usage="PRODUCES">
        <CName> gEfiPciCfg2PpiGuid </CName>
      </Ppi>
    </PPIs>
    <Externs>
      <Extern>
        <EntryPoint> PeimInitializePciCfg2 </EntryPoint>
      </Extern>
    </Externs>
    <PeiDepex>

```

```
<Expression> TRUE </Expression>
</PeiDepex>
</ModuleSurfaceArea>
```

A.8 PI DXE Driver

This examples contains the Module Surface Area for the sources to a DXE Driver that is implemented by Nosuch Corporation and produces the SMBUS Host Controller Protocol using I/O ports to access the SMBUS host controller hardware. The dependency expression for this DXE Driver is the Metronome Architectural Protocol because some of the SMBUS Host Controller Protocol services require a timeout. This DXE Driver uses the I/O Port Library to access the I/O ports for the SMBUS host controller, and the base I/O port address for the SMBUS Host Controller is defined by a the Platform Configuration Database token called **SmBusHostControllerIoPortBaseAddress**. The entry point to this module is called **InitializeSmBusHostController**.

```

    <ModuleSurfaceArea BinaryModule="false">
      <Header>
        <Name BaseName="SmBusHostControllerDxe ">
          SMBUS Host Controller DXE Driver
        </Name>
        <GUID Version="1.0"> EF514376-72C0-43e3-B4C7-2AE8D4D0848A
      </GUID>
      <Copyright>
        Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights
reserved.
      </Copyright>
      <Abstract>
        Produces the SMBUS Host Controller Protocol in the
Nosuch Corporation
        chipset. The SMBUS controller in this chipset is access
through I/O
        ports whose I/O port base address is programmable. The
I/O port base
        is specified by the Platform Configuration Database
token
        SmBusHostControllerIoPortBaseAddress.
      </Abstract>
    </Header>
    <ModuleProperties>
      <ModuleType> DXE_DRIVER </ModuleType>
      <Path> SmBusHostControllerDxe </Path>
      <PiSpecificationVersion> 1.0 </PiSpecificationVersion>
    </ModuleProperties>
    <LibraryClassDefinitions>
      <LibraryClass Usage="CONSUMES" >
        <Keyword> IoPortLib </Keyword>
      </LibraryClass>
    </LibraryClassDefinitions>
    <SourceFiles>
      <Filename> SmBusHostController.c </Filename>
    </SourceFiles>
    <PackageDependencies>
      <Package>
        <GUID Version="1.0"> 26E136A4-1060-48fb-AEB6-
3DB66C175CFB</GUID>
      </Package>
    </PackageDependencies>
    <Protocols>
      <Protocol Usage="PRODUCES">
        <CName> gEfiSmbusHostControllerProtocolGuid </CName>
      </Protocol>
      <Protocol Usage="CONSUMES">

```

```

        <CName> gEfiMetronomeArchProtocolGuid </CName>
    </Protocol>
</Protocols>
<Externs>
    <Extern>
        <EntryPoint> InitializeSmBusHostController </
EntryPoint>
    </Extern>
</Externs>
<PcdCoded>
    <PcdEntry PcdItemType="Pcd" PcdUsage="CONSUMES">
        <CName> SmBusHostControllerIoPortBaseAddress </CName>
        <TokenSpaceGuidCName> gNosuchCorpTokenSpaceGuid </
TokenSpaceGuidCName>
    </PcdEntry>
</PcdCoded>
<DxeDepex>
    <Expression> gEfiMetronomeArchProtocolGuid </Expression>
</DxeDepex>
</ModuleSurfaceArea>

```

A.9 Tool

This examples contains an executable utility from Nosuch Corporation that help print UEFI source files. Two versions of the tool are included. One for Win32 and the other for Win64.

```

<Tools>
    <Header>
        <Name> UEFI Print Utility Version 1.0 </Name>
        <Copyright>
            Copyright (c) 2008, Nosuch Corporation. All rights
reserved.
        </Copyright>
        <Abstract> Utility to print UEFI source files </Abstract>
    </Header>
    <Filename OS="Win32" Executable="true">Win32/UefiPrint.exe</
Filename>
    <Filename OS="Win64" Executable="true">Win64/UefiPrint.exe</
Filename>
</Tools>

```

